

LÊ DŨNG

CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGŨ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH VÀ BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM THỰC HÀNH

hm



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN GIÁO DỤC

2m

LÊ DŨNG

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ
NGŨ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH
VÀ BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM THỰC HÀNH**

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN GIÁO DỤC

Bản quyền thuộc Nhà xuất bản Giáo dục

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Theo sau cuốn “Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh diễn giải” đã được phát hành rộng rãi trên toàn quốc trong thời gian qua, cuốn “Chuyên đề Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh & Bài tập trắc nghiệm thực hành” được biên soạn nhằm phục vụ người học trong bối cảnh mới. Chương trình trung học phổ thông đã được cải tổ, hình thức thi trắc nghiệm được áp dụng bắt đầu với môn tiếng Anh và mở rộng với nhiều môn thi khác. Những thay đổi đó đang thật sự tạo cho người học một động lực để áp dụng một phương pháp học mới: học sâu theo chuyên đề và trải rộng để không bỏ sót kiến thức. Những kĩ năng làm bài theo dạng trắc nghiệm cũng là yếu tố quan trọng người học cần rèn luyện để cảm thấy tự tin và chắc chắn khi bước vào phòng thi.

Để giúp người học nắm vững các vấn đề ngữ pháp và hình thành các kĩ năng làm bài trắc nghiệm, sách được biên soạn thành 26 chương chuyên đề theo sau bởi các bài tập trắc nghiệm. Tất cả các câu hỏi trắc nghiệm đều có đáp án và hướng dẫn. Những câu trắc nghiệm khó thường được giảng giải tỉ mỉ để giúp người học hiểu được tại sao phải chọn đáp án này mà không chọn đáp án kia.

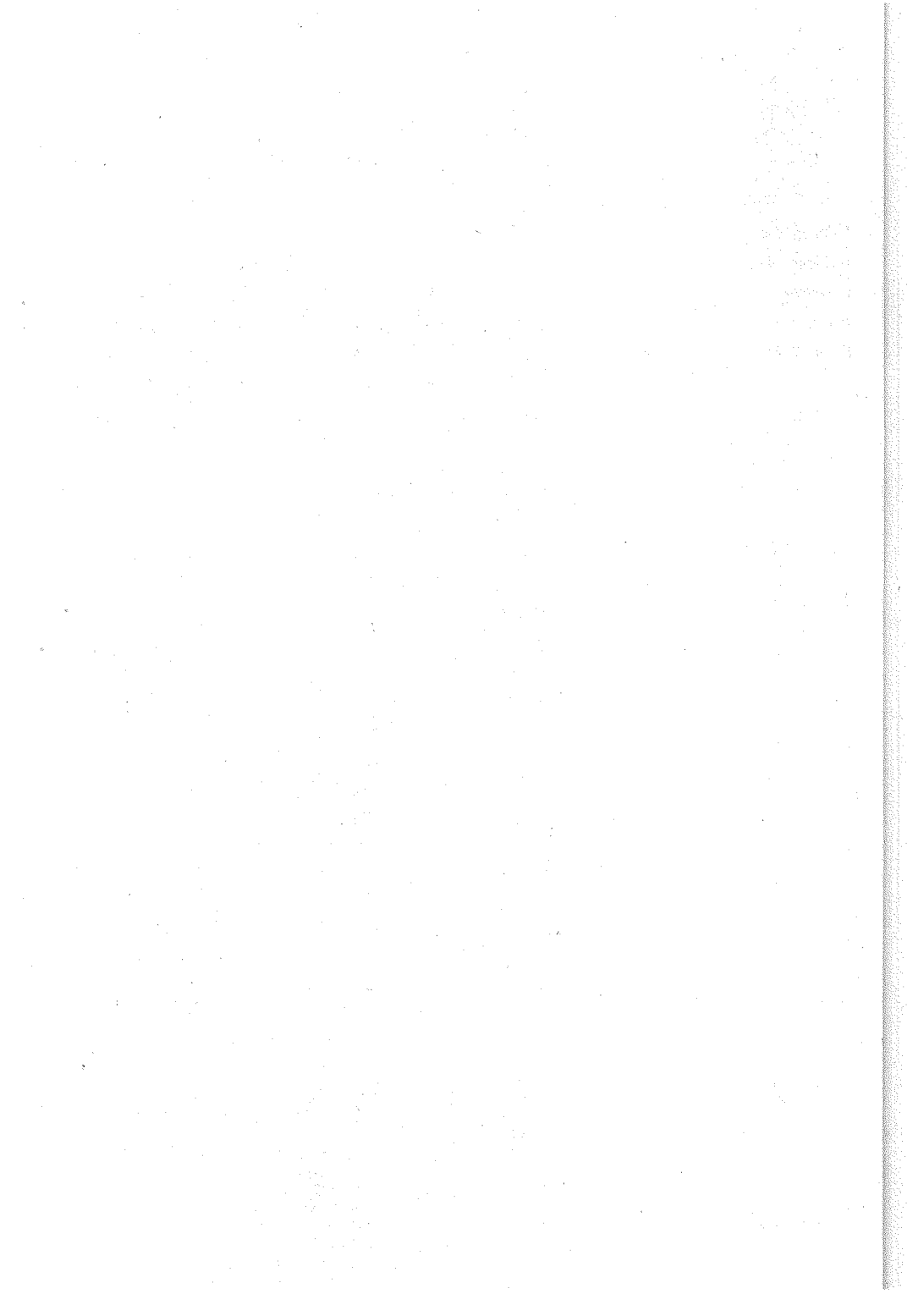
Một đặc điểm của cuốn sách là tất cả các ví dụ trong các chương đều được ghi âm vào đĩa CD-ROM cùng với các bài tập thực hành được thiết kế chấm tự động. Người học có nhu cầu dùng đĩa có thể liên hệ với Trung tâm CCE – Đại học Đà Nẵng tại số điện thoại 511-840450.

Trong quá trình biên soạn sách, những sai sót nhất định là điều khó tránh khỏi. Tác giả rất hoan nghênh những ý kiến đóng góp để lần tái bản sau cuốn sách được hoàn thiện hơn.

Với ước mong góp sức vào việc dạy và học tiếng Anh trong cả nước, tác giả hi vọng rằng cuốn sách này sẽ là công cụ hữu ích và đắc lực của người học.

Đại học Đà Nẵng, 21 tháng 6 năm 2007

Tác giả



1.

TENSES (Thì)

Tiếng Anh có một hệ thống gồm 12 thì được dùng để diễn tả cùng lúc hai khái niệm:

- (i) **Thời gian** (time): Thời điểm hành động được chủ thể tiến hành (quá khứ, hiện tại, tương lai).
- (ii) **Thể** (aspect): Diễn tả các ý niệm *đơn* (simple), *tiếp diễn* (continuous), *hoàn thành* (perfect) và *hoàn thành tiếp diễn* (perfect continuous).

TIME	ASPECT			
	SIMPLE	CONTINUOUS	PERFECT	PERFECT CONTINUOUS
Present	I work	I am working	I have worked	I have been working
	He works	He is working	He has worked	He has been working
	They work	They are working	They have worked	They have been working
Past	I worked	I was working	I had worked	I had been working
	He worked	He was working	He had worked	He had been working
	They worked	They were working	They had worked	They had been working
Future	I will work	I will be working	I will have worked	I will have been working
	He will work	He will be working	He will have worked	He will have been working
	They will work	They will be working	They will have worked	They will have been working

Các thì trong tiếng Anh được dùng tùy theo cách thức và thời gian thực hiện hành động:

1.1 Hành động lặp đi lặp lại (repeated actions):

a) trong hiện tại ➔ **Simple Present**

I travel to work by car.

John sometimes goes to school late.

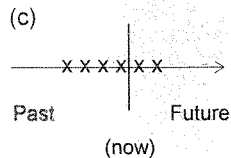
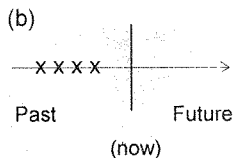
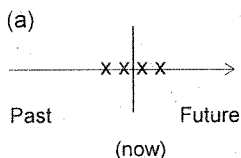
b) trong quá khứ ➔ **Simple Past**

When her husband was in Iraq, she wrote to him twice a week.

c) từ quá khứ đến hiện tại hoặc tương lai ➔ **Present Perfect**

We have read her stories several times.

Các phó từ chỉ sự lặp lại (always, usually, never, twice a week...) đóng vai trò rất quan trọng trong cách dùng này.



1.2 Hành động lặp đi lặp lại gây nên sự bức mình cho người nói (actions that cause annoyance):

a) trong hiện tại ➔ **Present Continuous** + *always / constantly* (= cứ mãi)

Jane *is always losing* things.

b) trong quá khứ ➔ **Past Continuous** + *always / constantly* (= cứ mãi)

Tom *was always poking* his nose into everybody else's affairs.

1.3 Hành động xảy ra tạm thời (temporary actions), không thường xuyên ➔ **Present Continuous**:

John often gets up at 7 o'clock but this month he is on holiday and so he *is getting* up later.

1.4 Hành động đang xảy ra thì một hành động khác xảy đến:

a) trong hiện tại ➔ **Present Continuous** + Simple Present

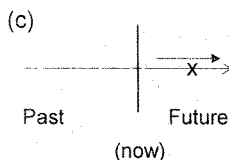
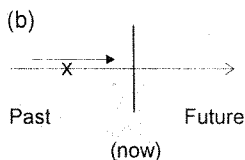
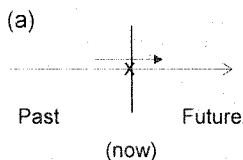
I usually phone her when *I am driving*.

b) trong quá khứ ➔ **Past Continuous** + Simple Past

The car crashed when it *was crossing* a crowded plaza.

c) trong tương lai ➔ **Future Continuous** + Simple Present

The band *will be playing* when the Queen arrives.



1.5 Hành động đã xảy ra và kết thúc trong quá khứ (finished past actions):

- a) biết rõ thời gian ➔ **Simple Past**

The Second World War *started* in 1939.

- b) không biết rõ thời gian ➔ **Present Perfect**

The Mayas *have made* so many beautiful houses.

1.6 Hành động kéo dài (actions extended for a period of time):

- a) nhưng đã chấm dứt trong quá khứ ➔ **Simple Past**

Tom *left* for Japan this morning. He *stayed* here for two weeks.

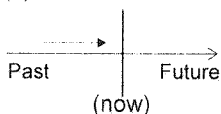
- b) nhưng đã chấm dứt ngay trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ ➔ **Past Perfect Continuous**

He *had been working* in my department for a year when he decided to take a new job.

- c) cho đến hiện tại và còn có thể tiếp tục ở tương lai ➔ **Present Perfect**

Tom *has stayed* here for two weeks. He still has many things to do before he leaves tomorrow.

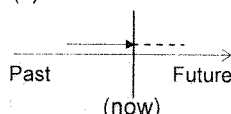
(a)



(b)



(c)



1.7 Hành động thực hiện trong quá khứ nhưng để lại kết quả ở hiện tại (past actions with present results): ➔ **Present Perfect**

I can't go to school because I *have broken* my leg.

[I **have** a broken leg]

Someone *has opened* the door. [The door **is** open]

Cách dùng này tương đương với các cụm từ trong tiếng Việt "đã chưa?", "đã rồi" và "chưa" (thường với *yet / already / not yet*):

Have you done all the housework?

I *haven't spoken* to the boss yet.

Và tương đương với câu hỏi "có bao giờ?" (thường với *ever*):

Have you seen 'Romeo and Juliet'?

Have you ever seen a ghost?

1.8 Hành động vừa mới xảy ra (recent actions): ➔ Present Perfect + just/lately/recently

There *have been* a lot of motor accidents *lately*.

We *have just finished* our tour around France.

1.9 Hành động kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại:

a) tính liên tục của hành động được nhấn mạnh ➔ **Present Perfect Continuous**

I feel very tired. I *have been gardening* all afternoon.

b) kết quả của hành động được nhấn mạnh ➔ **Present Perfect** [xem 1.7]

I *have planted* several new rose bushes.

1.10 Hành động xảy ra trước một thời điểm hoặc một hành động khác (action happening before a point of time or another action):

a) ở quá khứ ➔ **Past Perfect**

By this time last month, we *had worked* for NASA for twenty years.

[Hành động "worked" xảy ra trước "this time last week"]

I wondered who *had left* the letter on my desk.

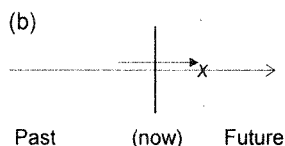
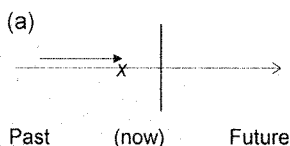
[Hành động "left" xảy ra trước hành động "wondered"]

b) ở tương lai ➔ **Future Perfect**

By Tuesday next week the spaceship *will have stayed* in orbit for 30 days.

[Hành động "stayed" xảy ra trước "Tuesday next week"]

Chú ý "by" trong những câu trên có nghĩa như "before".



NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Nhầm lẫn giữa Simple Past và Present Perfect:

*The Second World War has broken out in 1939.

[Dùng *broke out* mới đúng]

*Tom was out of work since last January.

[Dùng *has been* mới đúng]

- Dùng nhầm Present Perfect thay vì Simple Past:

*I have played tennis when I was at school.

[Dùng *played* mới đúng vì có mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian xác định "when..."]

- Dùng nhầm Simple Past thay vì Past Perfect:

*Tom did not see me for many years when I met him.

[Dùng *had not seen* mới đúng]

- Dùng không đúng hình thức của thì:

*Several important sport events taken place in this stadium since 2001.

[Dùng *have taken* mới đúng]

*This library is containing about one hundred thousand books.

[Không dùng hình thức tiếp diễn với *contain*]

TEST 1.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

1. He said he _____ his homework since 7 o'clock.
A. did
B. has done
C. had done
D. had been doing
2. A taxi collided with his car ten minutes ago but the police _____ yet.
A. has not come
B. have not come
C. did not come
D. had not come

3. At this time tomorrow I _____ on a ship.
A. sleep B. shall sleep
C. shall be slept D. shall be sleeping
4. After the accident, my car _____ a lot of expensive parts replaced.
A. had had B. had
C. is having D. was having
5. After shouting for help, she _____ off her shoes and _____ in to save him.
A. took / jumped B. takes / jumps
C. had taken / jumped D. has taken / jumps
6. After you _____ in for your connection, you will be given a boarding pass.
A. are checking B. check
C. checked D. have checked
7. Before the war he _____ a teacher at the University, as his father _____ before him.
A. was / was B. was / had been
C. had been / was D. has been / was
8. Before leaving home in the morning, she _____ her mother she _____ in the factory that afternoon.
A. had told / would work B. told / would work
C. told / works D. had told / worked
9. Before you mentioned him, I _____ of that author.
A. never hear B. have never heard
C. had never heard D. never heard
10. By the end of this year, Tom _____ English for three years.
A. will be studying B. has studied
C. will have studied D. has been studying
11. By the time you finish cooking they _____ their homework.
A. will have done B. are doing
C. have been doing D. have done
12. Can you please tell me how _____ ?
A. they escaped B. they were escaped
C. did they escape D. have they escaped
13. "Did you know that she is expecting a baby?" - "No, we _____ to get the news."
A. were surprised B. were surprising
C. have been surprised D. surprised

14. "Does Peter own that car?" – "No, I think his brother _____ it now."
A. has owned B. is owning
C. owns D. can own
15. During the game, the rain _____ so we had to stop suddenly.
A. has started B. started
C. was starting D. have started
16. The children _____ football when their mother came back home.
A. played B. is playing
C. play D. were playing
17. Fish _____ on the earth for ages and ages.
A. exists B. are existing
C. exist D. have existed
18. Firemen _____ to receive an increase in pay next month.
A. will be B. are
C. have been D. would be
19. How many times _____ him since he went to Edinburgh?
A. have you seen B. do you see
C. did you see D. had you seen
20. He was tired so he _____ to lie down for a little while.
A. decides B. decided
C. will decide D. has decided
21. He kept looking at her, wondering where he _____ her before.
A. has seen B. had seen
C. saw D. sees
22. He ran over the cat as it _____ across the road.
A. ran B. was running
C. had run D. runs
23. He _____ as a cashier for twenty-five years. Then he _____ and went to live in the country.
A. worked / retired B. had been working / retired
C. have worked / had retired D. had been working / had retired
24. Her boss _____ up as she came in. "You have been late every morning," he growled.
A. looks B. looked
C. has looked D. had looked

25. He _____ the tickets, but he had no time to call to the cinema.
A. would book
B. might book
C. could book
D. was going to book
26. He wrote to her a month ago, but I'm sure he _____ since then.
A. has not written
B. didn't write
C. was not writing
D. was not written
27. How many lessons _____ before you passed your tests?
A. did you have
B. do you have
C. have you had
D. were you having
28. "How long _____ your new assistant?" – "I _____ him for two years."
A. do you know / know
B. have you known / have known
C. did you know / knew
D. did you know / have known
29. How long _____ here by the end of next year?
A. have you worked
B. have you been working
C. will you have been working
D. will you work
30. How _____ to stop in time when that car shot out in front of you?
A. did you manage
B. were you managing
C. do you manage
D. had you managed

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

35. I cannot begin sewing my dress until mother _____ it out for me.
 A. will cut B. cut
 C. has cut D. will be cutting
36. I _____ everywhere for the pen I _____ yesterday.
 A. am searching / had lost B. searched / lost
 C. have searched / lost D. searched / has lost
37. In a few minutes' time, when the clock strikes six, I _____ here for three hours.
 A. waited B. will have been waiting
 C. have waited D. have been waiting
38. In a week's time he _____ here for exactly ten years.
 A. will have been worked B. had worked
 C. have worked D. will have worked
39. In a break-in last week the burglars _____ all my jewellery but left the pictures.
 A. have taken B. took
 C. take D. were taking
40. In the last two decades, space exploration _____ great contributions to weather forecasting.
 A. is making B. has made
 C. made D. makes
41. It was a fine day and the roads were crowded because a lot of people _____ to the seaside.
 A. had been rushing B. rushed
 C. had rushed D. were rushing
42. I waited at the traffic lights for ten minutes before they _____ green.
 A. had changed B. changed
 C. had been changing D. were changing
43. I _____ sunglasses today because the sun is very strong.
 A. am wearing B. wear
 C. have been wearing D. have worn
44. I went to collect my car but it was not ready. When I went to the service station it _____
 A. was still servicing B. was still serviced
 C. had been still serviced D. was still being serviced
45. Just before we _____ London, there was a violent storm.
 A. reached B. have reached
 C. has reached D. were reached

46. Most of the food had been eaten already so I had to be content with what _____.
- A. was remained B. were remained
C. was remaining D. remained
47. On July 20, 1969, Neil Armstrong _____ down onto the moon, the first person ever to set foot on another planet.
- A. was stepping B. stepped
C. has stepped D. had stepped
48. Peter went out for two hours. When he returned I asked him where _____.
- A. had he been B. he had been
C. has he been D. he has been
49. Since then, Columbia _____ into space more than seven times.
- A. has travelled B. travelled
C. has been travelling D. travels
50. She said that she'd phone me this morning, but it is now 12.30 and she _____ yet.
- A. does not phone B. had not phoned
C. has not phoned D. did not phone
51. Someone _____ my umbrella! It's all wet! And it was wet yesterday and the day before!
- A. has been used B. has been using
C. had used D. was using
52. That book _____ on the table for weeks. Haven't you read it?
- A. is lying B. has lied
C. has been lying D. lied
53. That the earth revolves round the sun _____ until the 15th century.
- A. was not believed B. has not been believed
C. had not been believed D. was not believed
54. The breakdown service arrived five minutes after he _____.
- A. phoned B. was phoning
C. had phoned D. had been phoning
55. The car _____ at full speed when it approached the corner.
- A. travelled B. was travelling
C. has travelled D. has been travelling
56. The car stopped for the children who _____ to cross the road.
- A. were waiting B. had waited
C. had been waiting D. waited

57. The car was stolen because the owner _____ to lock it.
A. had forgotten B. forgot
C. forgets D. has forgotten
58. Their football team _____ a championship until last season.
A. has never won B. is never winning
C. had never been winning D. had never won
59. The two robbers have been arrested and _____ in court tomorrow.
A. appeared B. will appear
C. will be appeared D. to appear
60. The phone _____ constantly since Jack won the first prize this morning.
A. has been ringing B. rang
C. had rung D. had been ringing

TEST 1.3

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

61. The teacher asked Bill why he _____ to school the day before.
A. had not gone B. did not go
C. has not gone D. does not go
62. The radio _____ since 7 a.m. I wish someone would turn it off.
A. play B. is playing
C. has played D. has been playing
63. There is only one student in the classroom _____ his lesson.
A. prepares B. to prepare
C. was preparing D. preparing
64. The existence of many stars in the sky _____ us to suspect that there may be life on another planet.
A. leading B. leads
C. lead D. have led
65. The policeman wants to know whether anybody _____.
A. injured B. were injured
C. have been injured D. has been injured
66. The students sat quietly in the classroom _____ to their teacher.
A. listening B. listen
C. listened D. listens

67. This is the first time I _____ to play badminton.
 A. have tried B. am trying
 C. was trying D. would be trying
68. This time next month I _____ on a beach.
 A. will sit B. am sitting
 C. will be sitting D. sit
69. This type of radio _____ many years ago.
 A. has first introduced B. has been first introduced
 C. was first introducing D. was first introduced
70. Tim _____ go fishing with his father when he was young.
 A. used to B. is used to
 C. has used to D. was used to
71. We _____ a very hard lesson the day before yesterday.
 A. studied B. had studied
 C. was studying D. had been studying
72. We _____ our evening meal at half past seven yesterday and then we watched a film on television.
 A. had been having B. were having
 C. had D. had had
73. We went for a tour through the town. Our guide _____ us to some interesting places.
 A. had lead B. head
 C. leads D. led
74. "What are you looking for?" – "I can't remember where I _____ my glasses."
 A. leave B. left
 C. had left D. was left
75. When boarding the plane, many passengers were annoyed because they _____ waiting in the airport for three and a half hours.
 A. are B. were
 C. have been D. had been
76. When we arrived, there was the smell of cooking _____ from the kitchen.
 A. come B. came
 C. has come D. coming
77. You _____ all the house but you still can't find your keys and you are late.
 A. have searched B. searched
 C. are searching D. search

- 2-CDNPTA..

87. Up to then I _____ such a fat man.
 A. never saw B. had never seen
 C. never had seen D. will never seen
88. When John and I got to the theatre, the movie _____.
 A. had already started B. already had started
 C. has already started D. already has started
89. If coastal erosion continues to take place at the present rate, in another fifty years this beach _____ any more.
 A. doesn't exist B. isn't going to exist
 C. isn't existing D. won't be existing
90. "Why did you buy all this sugar and chocolate?" – "I _____ a delicious dessert for dinner tonight."
 A. make B. will make
 C. am going to make D. will have made

TEST 1.4

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống trong đoạn văn sau:

According to a recent survey, most Chinese in Hong Kong preferred to work for Americans. They said that during the past ten years or so American businesses _____ (91) well and were very friendly. Almost all of them who had worked for Americans said they _____ (92) happy in their work.

They were then asked why they liked working for American bosses. Most replied that they were usually fair, kind, friendly and generous.

When asked whether _____ (93) working for British bosses, however, the Chinese _____ (94) that the British bosses were too strict and proud. The survey _____ (95) among 200 Chinese managers and advanced business students in Hong Kong. Most of the people _____ (96) said that the working condition was also much better in American companies. When managers were asked where they often conducted business, they replied that they _____ (97) to tea houses. A few people said that _____ (98) business with Americans over lunch at expensive hotel restaurants.

91. A. pay B. will pay
 C. are paying D. paid

- | | | |
|-----|--|--|
| 92. | A. are
C. have been | B. will be
D. were |
| 93. | A. did they like
C. they did like | B. they liked
D. liked they |
| 94. | A. answer
C. answered | B. will answer
D. have answered |
| 95. | A. conducted
C. has conducted | B. was conducted
D. was conducting |
| 96. | A. interview
C. interviewed | B. to interview
D. interviewing |
| 97. | A. are going
C. went | B. have gone
D. will go |
| 98. | A. they had often done
C. had they often done | B. they often had done
D. often had they done |

TEST 1.5

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống trong đoạn văn sau:

After taking off from Fort Lauderdale, the plane began to head east. They _____ (99) about 260 kilometres east before the pilots _____ (100) their instruments and _____ (101) north. A short time later, however, one of the pilots radioed, "Everything _____ (102) wrong ... even the ocean _____ (103) as it should. We _____ (104) our way." After _____ (105) this message, he was silent. It _____ (106) the last time anyone heard from him! A flying boat also _____ (107) shortly after _____ (108) to search for the missing plane.

- | | | |
|------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 99. | A. flew
C. is flying | B. was flying
D. has been flying |
| 100. | A. have checked
C. was checking | B. checked
D. were checking |
| 101. | A. turned
C. had turned | B. were turning
D. have turned |
| 102. | A. will be
C. was | B. is
D. would be |

103. A. was not looking B. hasn't looked
C. doesn't look D. will not look
104. A. lost B. had lost
C. were losing D. have lost
105. A. sending B. having sent
C. send D. had sent
106. A. is B. will be
C. would be D. was
107. A. has disappeared B. disappeared
C. was disappearing D. had disappeared
108. A. setting off B. set off
C. was-setting off D. had set off

TEST 1.6

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống trong đoạn văn sau:

Dear Sir,

I am writing to you because I _____ (109) my case. I _____ (110) it on the seat of the 8.30 bus from Station to Rosedale this morning. After I _____ (111) the bus, I suddenly _____ (112) leaving it and I _____ (113) back to the bus.

However, it _____ (114) no longer on the seat and no one _____ (115) anything about it. I _____ (116) the principal of my college but no one _____ (117) the missing case yet. I _____ (118) the case for three years and I _____ (119) it a lot.

I _____ (120) to hearing from you as soon as possible. I can call at the bus station on Tuesday to collect the case.

109. A. had just lost B. have just lost
C. lost D. was losing
110. A. left B. have left
C. had left D. leave
111. A. got off B. get off
C. had got off D. was getting off

- | | | |
|------|---|--|
| 112. | A. had remembered
C. have remembered | B. remembered
D. remember |
| 113. | A. am running
C. ran | B. was running
D. have run |
| 114. | A. had been
C. has been | B. is
D. was |
| 115. | A. had known
C. know | B. knew
D. have known |
| 116. | A. have already told
C. already tell | B. already told
D. had already told |
| 117. | A. handed
C. was handing | B. has handed
D. had handed |
| 118. | A. had
C. am having | B. was having
D. had had |
| 119. | A. have liked
C. am liking | B. like
D. have been liking |
| 120. | A. would look
C. have looked | B. will look
D. am looking forward |

TEST 1.7

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống trong đoạn văn sau:

By the middle of the 21st century we _____ (121) space stations which _____ (122) the earth and _____ (123) the moon, too. We _____ (124) bases on planets like Mars. At present, we use radar to "watch" nearly 8,000 objects in space. In addition, there are at least 30,000 bits of rubbish from the size of marbles to the size of the basket balls flying round the earth. These _____ (125) in number by the year 2050 and _____ (126) the earth. All these bits and pieces are watched by NORAD (North American Radar Defense Command).

NORAD _____ (127) more and more rubbish to watch as the years go by. Some bits fall back to the earth, like the Russian satellite C954, which crashed in the Northern Territories of Canada in 1978. Crashing junk could give us a bad headache. Most of the stuff _____ (128) up there (we hope)! The sad fact is that we who are alive today _____ (129) up our junk tomorrow. Perhaps we _____ (130) from some other space as it goes round and round the earth.

- | | | |
|------|---|--|
| 121. | A. will build
C. will have built | B. are building
D. have built |
| 122. | A. circle
C. will circle | B. are circling
D. have circled |
| 123. | A. will probably circle
C. probably circle | B. have probably circled
D. are probably circling |
| 124. | A. are establishing
C. will have established | B. have established
D. will establish |
| 125. | A. will increase
C. have increased | B. will be increasing
D. increase |
| 126. | A. will orbit
C. have orbited | B. orbit
D. will be orbiting |
| 127. | A. has
C. will have | B. has had
D. is having |
| 128. | A. are staying
C. have stayed | B. will be staying
D. stay |
| 129. | A. will not be clearing
C. does not clear | B. will not clear
D. has not cleared |
| 130. | A. just watch
C. have just watched | B. will just watch
D. will just be watched |

TEST 1.8

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống trong đoạn văn sau:

In a recent survey _____ (131) by Leisurama, 150 travel agents _____ (132) to solve certain holiday problems. As a result, it _____ (133) that most travel agents frequently give inaccurate information and unsound advice. They simply did not know enough about the places that they recommended.

When a tourist asked a travel agent _____ (134) a hotel on the Greek island of Corfu, the travel agent booked a hotel on the island of Kos, 500 miles away. When they _____ (135) for advice about crossing the Adriatic Sea from Italy to Corfu, several travel agents said it _____ (136) impossible to go by sea. Two others suggested _____ (137) all the way round to the Greek mainland.

Many agents didn't know whether visas _____ (138) for certain countries and some didn't even know what the local money was called.

Leisurama said that they often received better advice from students who were able to use the reference books and guides which were available.

- | | | |
|------|------------------|-----------------|
| 131. | A. conduct | B. conducting |
| | C. conducted | D. to conduct |
| 132. | A. were inviting | B. invited |
| | C. inviting | D. were invited |
| 133. | A. found | B. was found |
| | C. finds | D. was finding |
| 134. | A. recommending | B. recommend |
| | C. to recommend | D. recommended |
| 135. | A. were asked | B. asked |
| | C. asking | D. were asking |
| 136. | A. is being | B. has been |
| | C. will be | D. was |
| 137. | A. to drive | B. drive |
| | C. for driving | D. driving |
| 138. | A. requires | B. are required |
| | C. were required | D. required |

TEST 1.9

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống trong đoạn văn sau:

The man who made and lost a fortune _____ (139) kitchen furniture is back in business again. 37-year-old Timothy Lindlaw is now designing furniture for offices from the director's suite to the secretarial office.

Lindlaw had always had a lot of good ideas. After he _____ (140) a highly successful computer business for two years, he started his second business in a small garage, selling and installing kitchen furniture. He _____ (141) his first million pounds by the time he was thirty. Then he went on to earn over five million in three years. But, after _____ (142) with the managers of his company, he suddenly dismissed them. Within six months the business went bankrupt. And so _____ (143) Lindlaw.

"I had made five million pounds before things _____ (144) to go wrong," he said. "I was just unlucky to lose it later. All companies _____ (145) through good times and through bad times. Now I _____ (146) several lessons which I'll never forget." He said that he _____ (147) to call his new company "Office-Fit" and was already very successful. Lindlaw said that it was a market worth hundreds of millions. He added that until he started, no one _____ (148) of designing and supplying furniture for whole business companies, according to their individual requirements.

- | | | |
|------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 139. | A. manufacture | B. manufacturing |
| | C. to manufacture | D. manufactured |
| 140. | A. has run | B. runs |
| | C. was running | D. had run |
| 141. | A. has made | B. used to make |
| | C. had made | D. would make |
| 142. | A. quarrel | B. quarrelling |
| | C. quarreled | D. have quarreled |
| 143. | A. has | B. has had |
| | C. had | D. had had |
| 144. | A. have begun | B. began |
| | C. begin | D. would begin |
| 145. | A. went | B. have gone |
| | C. had gone | D. go |
| 146. | A. learnt | B. have learnt |
| | C. learnt | D. had learnt |
| 147. | A. had decided | B. was deciding |
| | C. decided | D. has decided |
| 148. | A. had ever thought | B. ever thinks |
| | C. would ever think | D. has ever thought |

2. VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS & INFINITIVES (Động từ + danh động từ và động từ nguyên mẫu)

2.1 Các động từ thông dụng được theo sau bởi danh động từ (gerund) gồm có:

admit (chấp nhận)	The man admitted having stolen a car.
advise (khuyên)	We'd advise packing up your suitcases at least six hours before the departure.
allow (cho phép)	We never allow smoking in this restaurant.
avoid (tránh)	You should avoid mentioning the death of her son.
can't help (không tránh khỏi)	When I see him, I can't help laughing.
can't face (không chịu được)	I can't face working with him.
consider (xem xét)	John has considered going to America again.
delay (trì hoãn)	We delay paying the rent until next week.
deny (từ chối)	The boy denied having stolen the bag.
detest (ghét)	I detest working with such an arrogant, self-satisfied man.
discuss (thảo luận)	We'll discuss building a new school for this town next week.
dislike (ghét)	Many people dislike living in high buildings.
enjoy (thích)	We enjoy walking together for hours on the beach.
fancy (mong ước)	Do you fancy going out somewhere?
finish (kết thúc)	Linda finished writing the annual report for her company yesterday.
give up (từ bỏ)	Many people gain weight after they give up smoking.
imagine (tưởng tượng)	He imagined living with her in a beautiful villa by the sea.
involve (bao gồm)	The exam involves writing two essays and answering five questions.
justify (bào chữa)	He can't justify neglecting his wife and children.

keep (on) (tiếp tục)

mind (bận tâm đến)

miss (nhỡ)

postpone (hoãn lại)

practise (luyện tập)

put off (hoãn lại)

quit (từ bỏ)

recollect (nhớ lại)

recommend (khuyến)

report (báo cáo)

resist (chống lại)

resent (bực tức)

resume (bắt đầu lại)

risk (liều)

suggest (đề nghị)

We kept (on) walking for hours under the sun.

I don't mind walking if it's fine.

The goalkeeper just missed stopping the ball.

The company postponed signing the contract due to lack of information.

She practises playing the piano two hours a day.

He put off going to the doctor.

The doctor advised him to quit smoking.

I don't recollect meeting him before.

We recommend checking the battery at least once a month.

The witnesses reported seeing the aircraft burst into flames.

The parliament resisted increasing income tax.

They resented being treated as criminals.

He resumed reading after a while.

He risked being arrested when he stayed in his house.

They suggest going by train because of safety reasons.

2.2 Các động từ thông dụng được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive) gồm có:

afford (có đủ tiền)

agree (đồng ý)

aim (nhằm mục đích)

appear (hình như)

arrange (sắp xếp)

ask (yêu cầu)

I can't afford to buy the car.

He agreed to pay half the cost.

They are aiming to increase income tax by 20%.

The police appeared not to know about the accident.

We arranged to meet him tomorrow morning.

The customer asked to see the manager.

attempt (cố gắng)

beg (van xin)

choose (chọn)

claim (tuyên bố)

come (rớt cuộc)

decide (quyết định)

demand (đòi hỏi)

expect (trông đợi)

fail (thất bại)

happen (tình cờ)

help (giúp)

hesitate (lưỡng lự)

hope (hi vọng)

learn (học)

long (mong mỏi)

manage (tìm được cách)

need (cần)

offer (đề nghị)

plan (dự định)

prepare (sửa soạn)

pretend (giả vờ)

promise (hứa hẹn)

prove (chứng tỏ)

refuse (từ chối)

seek (cố tìm cách)

Our staff will attempt to send you the latest models as soon as possible.

He begged to be told the truth.

We choose to stay at a cheap hotel.

I don't claim to be an expert in network security.

They came to accept the death of their daughter.
[They finally accepted...]

He decided to see her this afternoon.

I demanded to read the document before I signed it.

She expects to finish everything before the departure.

Mary failed to pass her final test.

We happened to meet in the street.
[We met by chance...]

They all helped to put up the tents for the victims.

Please do not hesitate to ask me if you have any questions.

We hope to finish the project this month.

The children are learning to swim.

I am longing to open this parcel. I can't wait.

We managed to cross the river before dark.

You need to send us a copy of your passport.

John offered to do the washing-up.

The general planned to attack at midnight.

We are preparing to make a boat for the trip.

The soldiers pretended to withdraw.

My godfather promised to send me some money.

His theory proves to be right.

The director refused to discuss the problem with the workers.

They sought to bring the conflict to an end.

seem (<i>hình như</i>)	The ship seemed to be sinking.
tend (<i>có khuynh hướng</i>)	Many people tend to think that water pollution is not a global issue.
threaten (<i>đe dọa</i>)	The terrorists threatened to kill a hostage if their demands were not met.
turn out (<i>hoá ra là</i>)	The prize they promised turned out to be a small one.
volunteer (<i>tình nguyện</i>)	The young man volunteered to help us.
want (<i>muốn</i>)	Does anyone want to say anything?
wish (<i>mong ước</i>)	We all wish to live a longer life.

2.3 Một số động từ có thể theo sau bởi to-infinitive hoặc gerund

a) với nghĩa hầu như không đổi:

begin (<i>bắt đầu</i>)	The president began { <i>to speak.</i> <i>speaking.</i>
bother (<i>bận tâm</i>)	Don't bother { <i>to knock</i> at the door while I am working. <i>knocking</i> at the door while I am working.
can't bear/stand (<i>không chịu được</i>)	I can't bear { <i>to see</i> her cry. <i>seeing</i> her cry.
cease (<i>ngừng</i>)	Once we retire, we automatically cease { <i>to get</i> safety insurance. <i>getting</i> safety insurance.
continue (<i>tiếp tục</i>)	The traffic continued { <i>to move</i> slowly. <i>moving</i> slowly.
hate (<i>ghét</i>)	I hate { <i>to leave</i> everything to the last minute. <i>leaving</i> everything to the last minute.
intend (<i>định</i>)	The government intends { <i>to take</i> immediate action after the demonstration. <i>taking</i> immediate action after the demonstration.

like (thích)

I like { *to ride* my bike to school every day.
riding my bike to school every day.

love (yêu)

Mary loves { *to eat* sandwiches.
eating sandwiches.

prefer (thích hơn)

Many people prefer { *to stay* indoors on Sunday.
staying indoors on Sunday.

propose (đề nghị)

Tom proposed { *to stay* for two more days.
staying for two more days.

start (bắt đầu)

It suddenly started { *to rain* heavily.
raining heavily.

b) với nghĩa khác nhau:

forget (quên)

He's absent-minded. He always forgets *to lock* the door.
[quên làm một việc gì]
I'll never forget *falling* off the horse last year.
[quên một việc đã qua]

get (tìm cách,
bắt đầu)

I hope I can get *to speak* to the President. [tìm cách]
It's half past seven. We'd better get *going*. [bắt đầu]

go on
(chuyển qua,
tiếp tục)

After receiving the prize, the winner went on *to thank* all the
people present. [chuyển qua]
The band went on *playing* even after everyone had left. [tiếp tục]

mean (định,
có nghĩa)

I'm sorry. I didn't mean *to step* on your foot. [định = intend]
This new order will mean *working* overtime.
[có nghĩa, dẫn đến = entail]

need/want
(muốn, cần)

We need/want *to use* the computer. [muốn]
The room needs/wants *cleaning*. [cần – chú ý gerund ở đây
mang nghĩa thụ động]

regret (tiếc)	We regret <i>to inform</i> you that the meeting has been cancelled. [tiếc khi phải làm một việc gì] We regret <i>having wasted</i> so much time last week. [tiếc về một việc đã qua]
remember (nhớ)	Please remember <i>to turn off</i> the light. [nhớ làm một việc gì] I can remember <i>walking</i> with her on the beach. [hồi tưởng lại một việc đã qua]
stop (ngừng)	At the newsagent she stopped <i>to buy</i> a newspaper. [dừng lại để làm một việc gì] You'd better stop <i>talking</i> and get on with some work. [ngừng làm một việc gì]
try (cố, thử)	I'm trying <i>to light</i> a fire, but the wood won't burn. [cố gắng làm một việc gì] You could try <i>pouring</i> some petrol on to make it burn. [thử làm một việc gì]

2.4. Những động từ thông dụng theo sau bởi tân ngữ (O) + động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive):

advise (khuyên)	They advised me <i>to go</i> to the doctor immediately.
allow (cho phép)	John allowed me <i>to use</i> his motorbike.
ask (yêu cầu)	I asked him <i>to post</i> the letter this morning.
beg (cầu xin)	He begged her <i>to come</i> and stay with him.
cause (gây ra)	Inflation caused prices <i>to rise</i> sharply.
challenge (thách đố)	He challenged me <i>to swim</i> across the river.
convince (thuyết phục)	They convinced him <i>to give up</i> the project.
dare (thách đố)	He dared me <i>to do</i> better than he had done.
encourage (khuyến khích)	My father encouraged me <i>to study</i> harder.
expect (trông đợi)	We expect you <i>to come</i> on time.
forbid (cấm)	They forbid him <i>to leave</i> .
force (ép buộc)	The investigator forced him <i>to speak</i> the truth.

hire (<i>thuê mượn</i>)	The owner hired him <i>to clean</i> the toilet every afternoon.
instruct (<i>chỉ đạo</i>)	The director instructed him <i>to keep</i> the door locked.
invite (<i>mời</i>)	We'd like <i>to invite</i> you all to attend the meeting this afternoon.
need (<i>cần</i>)	We need you <i>to help</i> us.
order (<i>ra lệnh</i>)	The judge ordered the man <i>to pay</i> a fine.
permit (<i>cho phép</i>)	They permitted the workers <i>to leave</i> early.
persuade (<i>thuyết phục</i>)	I persuaded her <i>to come</i> and see me.
remind (<i>nhắc</i>)	Mother reminded me <i>to turn</i> off the light.
require (<i>đòi hỏi</i>)	The headmaster required all the staff <i>to submit</i> their annual reports.
teach (<i>dạy</i>)	He taught me <i>to dance</i> .
tell (<i>bảo</i>)	The policeman told me <i>to show</i> him my driving license.
urge (<i>thúc giục</i>)	I urged him <i>to apply</i> for the job.
want (<i>muốn</i>)	We all want you <i>to be</i> happy.
warn (<i>cảnh báo</i>)	I warned him not <i>to drink</i> so much.

2.5 Những động từ theo sau bởi tân ngữ (O) + động từ nguyên mẫu không có to (bare infinitive):

make (<i>bảo, buộc</i>)	The secretary made me <i>fill</i> out a form.
let (<i>để cho</i>)	The mother let her children <i>play</i> in the yard.
have (<i>bảo</i>)	I had the maid <i>clean</i> up my room.
see (<i>trông thấy</i>)	We saw the workers <i>leave</i> the building very early in the morning.
hear (<i>nghe</i>)	I heard someone <i>knock</i> on the door last night.
notice (<i>để ý thấy</i>)	He noticed the robbers <i>come</i> in by the back door.

Các động từ *see, hear, notice* còn có thể được theo sau bởi các hiện tại phân từ.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Nhầm lẫn giữa động từ theo sau bởi *to*-infinitive và gerund:

*They *miss to watch* the news when they are travelling.

[Phải dùng *miss watching* thay cho *miss to watch*]

*We *demand knowing* our status.

[Phải dùng *demand to know* thay cho *demand knowing*]

- Dùng liên tiếp hai động từ tận cùng bằng *-ing*:

*They were already *beginning arriving*.

[Phải dùng *beginning to arrive* thay cho *beginning arriving*]

- Dùng gerund sau *would like/love*:

*Our guest *would like saying* a few words to you.

[Phải thay *would like saying* bằng *would like to say*]

- Dùng sai gerund hoặc infinitive do không phân biệt nghĩa:

*I'll never *forget to break down* on the motorway. It was awful.

[Phải thay *forget to break down* bằng *forget breaking down*: quên một việc đã qua]

*At the services John *stopped buying* a newspaper.

[Phải thay *stopped buying* (ngừng mua) bằng *stopped to buy* (ngừng xe để mua)]

- Nhầm lẫn do ảnh hưởng của mẫu câu tương tự:

*They don't *allow to smoke* here.

[Phải dùng *allow smoking* thay cho *allow to smoke*. Cần chú ý mẫu câu *to allow sb to do sth*]

TEST 2.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

149. Graduate students often spend their weekends _____ data for their research.

A. gather

B. to gather

C. gathering

D. to gathering

- 3-CDNPTA..

161. I think you'd better _____ if you don't want to miss the train.
 A. hurry B. would hurry
 C. hurried D. hurrying
162. I regret _____ that the sight-seeing tour has been cancelled because of the bad weather.
 A. to tell you B. telling you
 C. to say you D. saying you
163. I would advise you _____ that young man in spite of his charming manner.
 A. to not trust B. to never trust
 C. never to trust D. never trust
164. He refused _____ us the reason why he didn't come to the class meeting last week.
 A. telling B. to tell
 C. told D. having told
165. He won a lottery, and his girlfriend suggested _____ the world.
 A. to travel around B. travelling in
 C. travelling around D. that they travelling around
166. His parents insisted _____ a medical training course.
 A. on him taking B. on taking him
 C. him to take D. on him to take
167. Luckily, she remembered _____ up with petrol, so she didn't run out on the way there.
 A. to fill B. filling
 C. filled D. having filled
168. The doctor advised him _____ and to take up some sport.
 A. to stop smoke B. stop smoking
 C. to stop smoking D. to stop to smoke
169. The children's mother warned them _____ near the river.
 A. not to go B. to not go
 C. not going D. don't go
170. The teachers have had some problems _____ return the papers to the students.
 A. to decide when to B. deciding when to
 C. deciding D. deciding when
171. The television programs we allow _____ influence their learning.
 A. a children to watch B. our children to watch
 C. our children watch D. our children watching

172. They didn't stop _____ until 11 p.m., when there was a power cut.
 A. singing and dancing B. to sing and dance
 C. to sing and dancing D. singing and dance
173. When his wife arrived home after a hard day at work, he was sitting on the sofa _____.
 A. watched TV B. watch TV
 C. was watching TV D. watching TV
174. "You are lucky you haven't got a child _____," said the woman.
 A. for looking after B. looking after
 C. to look after D. look after
175. A cat suddenly ran across the street. Fortunately, he managed _____ just in time.
 A. to stop B. stopping
 C. to have stopped D. stopped
176. Phosphates _____ to most farm land in our country.
 A. need added B. need to add
 C. need to be added D. need to adding
177. Whenever those two ladies meet, they stop _____.
 A. talking B. talk
 C. to talking D. to talk
178. It's still raining. I'd rather _____ home and watch football on TV.
 A. to stay B. staying at
 C. stay D. stayed at

TEST 2.2

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

179. I think I hear someone _____ the back windows. Do you hear it, too?
 A. trying open B. trying to open
 C. tried opening D. try opened
180. John hoped to finish _____ two of his essays before the deadline.
 A. written B. write
 C. to write D. writing
181. One of the least effective ways of storing information is learning _____ it.
 A. how repeat B. repeating
 C. to repeat D. repeat

182. Most of the participants can't help _____ why the president spoke so angrily.
A. wonder B. wondering
C. to wonder D. wondered
183. The woman meant _____ a newspaper but she didn't see anyone _____ it.
A. to buy / to sell B. to buy / selling
C. buying / selling D. buying / to sell
184. The speaker began by _____ them where the mountain was, and went on _____ about its history.
A. telling / talking B. tell / talk
C. told / talked D. to tell / to talk
185. I was very angry. My friend John refused _____ me a lift as he had promised.
A. give B. to give
C. giving D. gave
186. The film wasn't very good. The audience started _____ before it was over.
A. leaving B. to leave
C. Both A and B are correct. D. leave
187. After walking for two hours the guide stopped to let the others _____ with them.
A. caught up B. to catch up
C. catching up D. catch up
188. What do you remember _____ when you were a little boy?
A. do B. doing
C. to do D. Both B and C are correct.
189. Linda regrets _____ to her mother's advice. She was right.
A. not listen B. not to listen
C. not listening D. to not listen
190. I can never forget _____ our team score the winning goal in the final game against Brazil.
A. watching B. to watch
C. Both A and B are correct. D. watch
191. My friend forgot _____ a book back to the library, so he had to pay a fine.
A. take B. to take
C. taking D. Both B and C are correct
192. Would you please remind her _____ me tomorrow morning?
A. calling B. to call
C. call D. Both A and B are correct.

193. John volunteered _____ the food supply to the victims in the flood area.
A. take B. to take
C. taking D. Both A and B are correct.
194. My friend Amy is a blabbermouth! She can't resist _____ everyone what she heard from me!
A. tell B. to tell
C. telling D. Both B and C are correct.
195. The man finally admitted _____ responsible for the accident last week.
A. to be B. for to be
C. for being D. being
196. The union members discussed _____ the next meeting until next week.
A. postponing B. to postpone
C. postpone D. Both A and B are correct.
197. I have been having a lot of trouble with my old car the last couple of months. I am thinking about _____ a new one.
A. to buy B. buy
C. buying D. Both A and C are correct.
198. Mary appeared _____, but she wasn't. She was only pretending.
A. to asleep B. to be asleep
C. being asleep D. be asleep
199. John is only nine, but he intends _____ a singer when he grows up.
A. be B. to be
C. being D. Both B and C are correct.
200. It was cold and snowy last Sunday, so we postponed _____ the botanical gardens until next Sunday.
A. visiting B. to visit
C. visited D. Both A and B are correct.
201. I hope _____ all of my courses this term. So far my grades have been pretty good.
A. passing B. to pass
C. pass D. Both A and B are correct.
202. My father continued _____ his book even though the children were making a lot of noise.
A. read B. and reading
C. and read D. reading
203. Linda can't stand _____ in a room with all of the windows closed.
A. sleep B. sleeping
C. to sleep D. Both B and C are correct.

204. It is raining hard this week but Tom expects _____ with his friend this weekend.
- A. to go and fish B. to go fishing
C. going fishing D. to go to fish
205. When my teacher is listening to someone who is speaking English very fast, he nods his head and pretends _____.
- A. understanding B. to understand
C. understanding it D. to understand it
206. After the operation, the doctors wouldn't let him _____ out of bed for three days.
- A. get B. to get
C. getting D. gets
207. She always puts off _____ the dinner dishes until the next morning.
- A. to wash B. washing
C. wash D. and washes
208. After Anne got a speeding ticket and had to pay a big fine, she decided _____ over the speed limit on interstate highways.
- A. to stop driving B. to stop to drive
C. stopping to drive D. stopping driving

3. INFINITIVES & MODAL VERBS (Động từ nguyên mẫu & động từ tình thái)

CÁC HÌNH THỨC CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU

Các động từ nguyên mẫu luôn theo sau các động từ tình thái (can, may, must...). Hiểu rõ hình thức và cách dùng của các động từ nguyên mẫu sẽ giúp người học nắm được cách sử dụng các cụm động từ như "may be going", "shouldn't have done", "needn't have cut" v.v...

3.1 Động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitives) có ba hình thức:

a) **Simple infinitive** (Động từ nguyên mẫu đơn): là hình thức đơn giản của động từ nguyên mẫu (to work, to go...), được dùng để diễn tả hành động xảy ra **sau** hành động được diễn tả bởi động từ đi trước.

We planned *to meet* in the Town Hall.

They will decide *to delay* the test.

b) **Present infinitive** (Động từ nguyên mẫu tiếp diễn): gồm *to be* + *present participle*, được dùng để diễn tả hành động **đang xảy ra** vào thời gian được đề cập tới ở động từ đi trước.

We're lucky *to be living* in such a beautiful house.

The plane seemed *to be losing* height.

c) **Perfect infinitive** (Động từ nguyên mẫu hoàn thành): gồm *to have* + *past participle*, được dùng để diễn tả hành động xảy ra **trước** hành động ở động từ đi trước.

I seem *to have left* my briefcase behind.

The pilot was believed *to have survived* the crash.

ĐỘNG TỪ TÌNH THÁI

Các động từ tình thái luôn luôn có cùng hình thức cho tất cả các ngôi. Chúng được dùng để chỉ phương thức, thái độ hành động của chủ ngữ.

3.2 Diễn tả sự xin phép (asking permission) ➔ *can, may, could*

Can I take your umbrella? Of course you *can*.

May we come in? Yes, of course.

Could I borrow this dictionary, please? Well, I need it actually.

3.3 Diễn tả sự cho phép (giving permission) ➔ *can, may*

You *can* stay here if you like.

May I read the letter? Yes, of course you *may*.

3.4 Diễn tả sự chắc chắn, giả định (certainty, assumption) ➔ *must* (chắc là, hẳn là), *will* (hẳn là), *can't* (không thể nào là)

You talked to her yesterday, so you *must* know her name.

There's someone at the door. It'll be the postman.

The bill *can't* be so much. There *must* be a mistake.

Must, *will* và *can't* có thể dùng kết hợp với các hình thức của động từ nguyên mẫu (xem 3.1):

The train is late. It *must be coming* soon.

John isn't here. He'll *be sitting* somewhere in the canteen.

This glass is cracked. Someone *must have dropped* it.

I *can't have gone* to the wrong house. I checked the address.

Khi mức độ chắc chắn không cao, chúng ta dùng *may*, *might* và *could* (có lẽ):

The shop *may/might/could be* closed today.

May, *might* và *could* có thể dùng kết hợp với các hình thức của động từ nguyên mẫu (xem 3.1):

Mary hasn't come home yet. She *may/might/could be working* late.

I don't know where Tom is. He *may/might/could have left*.

[= It is possible he left.]

3.5 Diễn tả sự bắt buộc (obligation) ➔ *must* (phải)

You *must* go now.

People *must* eat in order to live.

Chú ý hình thức phủ định *mustn't* (không được) dùng để chỉ sự cấm đoán. Khi muốn nói *không phải*, chúng ta phải dùng *don't have to* hoặc *needn't*.

You *mustn't* drive so fast. It is against the law.

You *do not have to* drive so fast. We have plenty of time.

Must và *have to* thường được xem là tương đương với nhau. *Have to* thường được dùng thay *must* ở thì hiện tại (*have to*, *don't have to*), tương lai (*will have to*) và quá khứ (*had to*). Tuy nhiên, giữa *must* và *have to* có sự khác biệt nhỏ: *must* diễn tả sự bắt buộc đến từ phía người nói, *have to* diễn tả sự bắt buộc do tình thế, quy định hay luật lệ:

We *have to* take an exam at the end of the course. [Quy định của kì thi.]

You *must* take off your shoes. [Yêu cầu của người nói.]

3.6 Diễn tả sự khuyên bảo (advisability) ➔ *should*, *ought to* (nên)

You broke Jane's bike, so you *should* buy her a new one.

You *shouldn't* leave your car here.

Students *ought to* revise before the exam.

3.7 Diễn tả năng lực (ability) ➔ *can* (có thể)

Little Jack *can* play the piano. I taught him.

He *could* play the piano when he was nine.

Can có thể được thay thế bởi **be able to** trong các câu trên và đặc biệt ở các thì hoàn thành và tương lai:

Little Jack *can/ is able to* play the piano. I taught him.

He *could/ was able to* play the piano when he was nine.

My father has been ill. He *hasn't been able to* work for some time.

Take this course and you *will be able to* swim well.

3.8 Diễn tả sự cần thiết (necessity) ➔ *need* (chủ yếu trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn)

You *needn't* apologize. It's not your fault.

If it rains tomorrow you *need not* go out.

Hình thức quá khứ phủ định của *need* là **needn't** + perfect infinitive (lẽ ra không cần phải) hoặc **didn't need to** (đã không cần phải).

It was a beautiful day yesterday. We *needn't have brought* our umbrellas.

3.9 Diễn tả lời đề nghị (request) ➔ *will, would, shall*

Will/would you please pass the tea?

Shall I open the window?

3.10 Các cụm động từ thông dụng với động từ nguyên mẫu hoàn thành:

- a) **Should + perfect infinitive:** *đáng lẽ... đã phải*, diễn tả một bổn phận hoặc nghĩa vụ không được thực hiện trong quá khứ (unfulfilled past obligation).

I've forgotten the address. I should have written it down.

He's a very selfish man. He should have helped her.

- b) **Must + perfect infinitive:** *hẳn là đã...*, diễn tả sự suy diễn về một sự việc trong quá khứ (affirmative past deduction).

The streets are wet. It must have rained last night.

This pen won't write. It must have run out of ink.

- c) **Could + perfect infinitive:** *lẽ ra... có thể*, diễn tả một khả năng không được thực hiện trong quá khứ (an unused ability):

They could have lent me some money (but they didn't).

I could have finished the work (but I didn't).

Could + perfect infinitive còn có nghĩa "có thể đã...", dùng để diễn tả một sự việc người nói không biết có xảy ra trong quá khứ hay không:

My umbrella has disappeared! Who could have taken it?

John could have taken my wallet; he was in my room yesterday.

- d) **Can't/couldn't + perfect infinitive:** *không thể nào đã...*, diễn tả sự suy diễn phủ định về một sự việc trong quá khứ (negative past deduction). Chúng được xem là hình thức phủ định của *must + perfect infinitive*:

He can't/couldn't have moved the piano himself. It takes two men to lift it.

We know he couldn't have crossed the river, because the bridge was broken and there was no boat.

- e) **Were/was to + perfect infinitive:** *lẽ ra đã...*, diễn tả một kế hoạch không được thực hiện trong quá khứ (an unfulfilled plan):

There were to have been motor-cycle races on the sands but as it is so wet they have been cancelled.

The harvest was to have been ready but the heavy rain delayed it.

- f) **Needn't + perfect infinitive:** *lẽ ra không cần phải*, diễn tả một hành động không cần thiết phải thực hiện trong quá khứ:

We *needn't have hurried*. Now we are too early.

It's a beautiful day. We *needn't have brought* this umbrella.

- g) **May/might + perfect infinitive:** *có thể đã...*, chỉ sự suy đoán về một hành động trong quá khứ (past speculation):

They all think that the plane *might have been crashed*.

I don't know where the letter is. I *may have thrown* it away.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Không dùng động từ nguyên mẫu phù hợp ở nơi cần thiết:

* If John left London an hour ago, he may *arrive* in Paris now.

[Phải dùng *be arriving* thay cho *arrive* để diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra]

* He was sorry to *miss* the show.

[Phải dùng *to have missed* thay cho *to miss* để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra trước hành động ở động từ chính]

* The young man was unsteady on his feet. He seemed *to be drinking*.

[Nên dùng *to have been drinking* thay cho *to be drinking*]

* The bike must be stolen while we were having lunch.

[Nên viết: The bike *must have been stolen* while we ...]

- Dùng sai do nhầm nghĩa của *mustn't* và *don't have to*:

* Tomorrow is Saturday. I *mustn't* go to work.

[Phải nói *don't have to* thay cho *mustn't*]

- Dùng hình thức động từ không phù hợp với thời gian:

* Tom *can* walk when he was only ten months old.

[Phải viết: Tom *could* walk when he was ...]

- Dùng hình thức active/passive không đúng:

* The diamond ring *must have stolen* while we were out.

[Phải dùng *must have been stolen* thay cho *must have stolen*]

TEST 3.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

209. "Do you _____ chew with your mouth open like that? Geez, it's making me sick watching you eat that piece of pizza."
- A. have to B. can
C. should D. able to
210. I _____ speak Arabic fluently when I was a child.
- A. could B. can
C. would D. should
211. I was reading the book last night before I went to bed. I never took it out of this room. It _____ be lying around here somewhere.
- A. must B. should
C. could D. could
212. - "_____ I borrow your lighter for a minute?"
- "Sure, no problem. Actually, you _____ keep it if you want to. I've given up smoking."
- A. Could/ may B. May/ could
C. Could/ can D. Could/ could
213. If you've worried about your health, perhaps you _____ see a doctor.
- A. should B. can
C. must D. will
214. If you want to get a better feeling for how the city is laid out, you _____ walk downtown and explore the waterfront.
- A. have to B. will
C. can D. could
215. "I'm sorry, sir. You _____ drink beer in here."
- A. needn't B. can't
C. shouldn't D. won't
216. It _____ rain this evening. Why don't you take an umbrella?
- A. could be B. must
C. might D. had better
217. I've redone this math problem at least twenty times, but my answer is wrong according to the answer key. The answer in the book _____ be wrong!
- A. have to B. must
C. should D. can

218. – "We're getting married."
 – "Congratulations!"
 – "But you _____ tell anyone. It's a secret."
 A. can't B. won't
 C. mustn't D. needn't
219. Mr Brown is very rich. He _____ work hard for a living.
 A. mustn't B. shouldn't
 C. can't D. doesn't have to
220. Nancy said you didn't need to buy her anything for her birthday, but I really think you _____ at least get her some flowers or a nice bottle of wine.
 A. could B. must
 C. have to D. should
221. "Oh my God, he's unconscious. Don't move him – he _____ have internal injuries. Somebody call an ambulance."
 A. must B. could
 C. should D. would
222. Please make sure to water my plants while I am gone. If they don't get enough water, they _____ die.
 A. will B. must
 C. should D. might
223. Ted's flight from Amsterdam took more than 11 hours. He _____ be exhausted after such a long flight.
 A. might B. should
 C. must D. ought to
224. The book is optional. My professor said we could read it if we needed extra credit. But we _____ read it if we don't want to.
 A. cannot B. must not
 C. don't have to D. shouldn't
225. You _____ forget to pay the rent tomorrow. The landlord is very strict about paying on time.
 A. mustn't B. don't have to
 C. couldn't D. won't
226. These are my most precious possessions so you _____ touch them, but you _____ look at them.
 A. can't / must B. mustn't / can
 C. shouldn't / must D. mustn't / should

227. _____ this new product prolong human life?
 A. May B. Should
 C. Can D. Might
228. Tom has just got a new job. He _____ be very pleased.
 A. might B. must
 C. should D. will
229. I just tripped on your carpet and almost fell! There's a hole in it. You _____ fix that before someone gets hurt.
 A. can B. ought to
 C. may D. could
230. We _____ discuss the differences between urban life and rural life in groups.
 A. can B. might
 C. mustn't D. shouldn't
231. We _____ no longer suffer the injustice of oppression! Freedom shall be ours!
 A. would B. might
 C. shall D. can
232. She hasn't eaten anything since yesterday. She _____ be really hungry.
 A. might B. will
 C. must D. can
233. When dining with friends in a restaurant, you _____ be expected to "go Dutch".
 A. can B. must
 C. should D. shouldn't
234. When my father was young, he _____ work in the garden for long hours.
 A. can B. could
 C. will D. should
235. Where is the spatula? It _____ be in this drawer but it's not here.
 A. must B. can
 C. will D. should
236. Yesterday, I _____ cram all day for my French final. I didn't get to sleep until after midnight.
 A. had to B. should
 C. must D. could
237. You _____ avoid walking under a ladder.
 A. can B. will
 C. should D. must

238. You _____ be rich to be a success. Some of the most successful people I know haven't got a penny to their name.
- A. can't B. don't have to
- C. shouldn't D. couldn't

TEST 3.2

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

239. This building _____ finished by the end of last year but there have been so many strikes that it isn't finished yet.
- A. will have been B. should have been
C. was to have been D. may have been
240. Jenny's engagement ring is enormous! It _____ have cost a fortune.
- A. can B. must
C. could D. should
241. Oh no! Frank's wallet is lying on the coffee table. He _____ have left it here last night.
- A. must B. should
C. could D. can
242. Tom painted his bedroom black. It looks dark and dreary. He _____ a different colour.
- A. has to choose B. should have chosen
C. must have chosen D. could have been choosing
243. Dan appears _____ some weight. Has he been ill?
- A. having been lost B. to have lost
C. have been lost D. have lost
244. I'm certain that Tim has gone home. His jacket's not here. He _____ gone home.
- A. could have B. might have
C. should have D. must have
245. I don't know who rang, but it _____ Jim.
- A. could have been B. should have been
C. might have been D. shouldn't have been
246. "I heard their phone ringing." – "You _____ their phone ringing. They haven't got a phone."
- A. shouldn't have heard B. mustn't have heard
C. must have heard D. couldn't have heard

247. I know you didn't see me yesterday because I was in New York. You _____ me.
 A. may not have seen B. mustn't have seen
 C. shouldn't have seen D. can't have seen
248. "I left a cookie on the table, but now it's gone. What happened to it?" – "I don't know. One of the children _____ it."
 A. may have eaten B. could eat
 C. had to eat D. should have eaten
249. "I locked myself out of my apartment. I didn't know what to do." – "You _____ your roommate."
 A. could have called B. should have called
 C. would have called D. may have called
250. It's a pity you didn't ask because I _____ you.
 A. could help B. could have helped
 C. should have helped D. would help
251. "I went with him to show him the way." – "You _____ that. He knows the way."
 A. needn't have done B. shouldn't have done
 C. may not have done D. appeared not to have done
252. "I've written to Paul." – "You _____. He's coming here tomorrow. You'll see him before he gets your letter."
 A. shouldn't have written B. needn't have written
 C. mustn't have written D. were to have written
253. "The instructions were in French. I translated them into English for him." – "You _____ them. He knows French."
 A. needn't have translated B. oughtn't to have translated
 C. shouldn't have translated D. can't have translated
254. They _____ a two-storey house, but money ran out so they built a bungalow instead.
 A. should have built B. may have built
 C. ought to have built D. were to have built
255. They _____ married next week but now they have quarrelled and the wedding has been cancelled.
 A. will have B. were to have been
 C. will have been D. should have been

256. "Why are you so sure that Ann didn't commit the crime she's been accused of committing?" – "She _____ that crime because I was with her, and we were out of town on that day."
- A. may not have committed B. wasn't supposed to commit
C. committed D. couldn't have committed
257. "As soon as I switched on my new electric cooker there was an explosion." – "There _____ something wrong with it."
- A. shouldn't have been B. needn't have been
C. must have been D. might have been
258. Why are you so late? You _____ here two hours ago!
- A. need have been B. must have been
C. should have been D. ought to have been here
259. He _____ by this window because it is barred.
- A. couldn't escape B. couldn't have escaped
C. must have escaped D. mightn't have escaped
260. How did he get out of the house? He _____ down the stairs for they were blazing.
- A. could have come B. ought to have come
C. couldn't have come D. mightn't have come
261. "I bought a sweater at Marks and Spencer's last Sunday." – "You _____ it on Sunday. Marks and Spencer's is shut on Sundays."
- A. shouldn't have bought B. couldn't have bought
C. mustn't have bought D. mightn't have bought
262. "I can't think why they didn't try to help him." – "They _____ that he was drowning."
- A. couldn't have realized B. mightn't have realized
C. must have realized D. mustn't have realized
263. "I found that everything I said on the phone had been reported to the police." – "Your phone _____ tapped."
- A. must have been B. shouldn't have been
C. might have been D. need have been
264. I found this baby bird at the foot of a tree. It _____ from a nest.
- A. might have fallen B. must have fallen
C. may have fallen D. ought to have fallen
265. "I saw a rattlesnake near the river yesterday." – "You _____ a rattlesnake. There aren't any rattlesnakes in this country."
- A. couldn't have seen B. mustn't have seen
C. shouldn't have seen D. mightn't have seen

266. "I waited from 8.00 to 8.30 under the clock and he says he waited from 8.00 to 8.30 under the clock and we didn't see each other!" – "You _____ under different clocks! There are two in the station, you know."
- A. should have been B. shouldn't have been
C. could have been D. needn't have been
267. I wonder who broke the wineglass; it _____ the cat for she was out all day.
- A. must have been B. can't have been
C. mightn't have been D. shouldn't have been
268. "Fares are awful! I had to pay \$2 for my tickets and \$1 for the baby." – "But you _____ a ticket for the baby. Babies travel free."
- A. weren't to have bought B. needn't have bought
C. mustn't have bought D. mightn't have bought

4. **USED TO & BE/GET USED TO**

4.1 **Used to:** đã thường, diễn tả thói quen trong quá khứ nay không còn nữa:

I *used to* come here when I was a child.

Before we had television, people *used to* make their own entertainment.

What kind of books *did you use to* read as a child?

4.2 **Be used to:** quen thuộc với (+ gerund) (= be accustomed to)

We're *used to* living in big cities now.

We are from different cultures. You *are used to* having fish for breakfast. I *am used to* having cheese and bread for breakfast.

4.3 **Get used to và get accustomed to** + gerund có nghĩa tương tự như **be used to**, nhưng **get** (= become) nhấn mạnh mức độ tăng dần của thói quen theo thời gian.

My sister moved to Canada. After a while she *got used to* living in a cold climate.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Nhầm lẫn giữa *used to* và *be used to*:

*We *were used to* live in New Zealand, but now I live in Australia.

[Phải dùng *used to*]

*Mary has lived in Thailand for a long time. She *used to* living in warm weather.

[Phải dùng *is used to*]

- Dùng sai hình thức của động từ theo sau *be/get used to* và *be/get accustomed to*:

*I have lived in London for a year but I never get used to *drive* on the left.

[Phải dùng gerund (driving) sau các động từ trên]

TEST 4.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

269. Why is Jane so spoiled? She is accustomed _____ whatever she wants.
A. to have B. to having
C. has D. had
270. They are accustomed _____ up late at weekends.
A. with getting B. to get
C. by getting D. to getting
271. When British people go abroad, it takes them several days to get used to _____ on the right-hand side road.
A. drive B. driven
C. driving D. drove
272. I _____ sit in the back of the classroom, but now I prefer to sit in the front row.
A. used to B. got used to
C. got accustomed to D. am used to
273. Roses and many other flowers are used to _____ perfume.
A. make B. making
C. be made D. made
274. John has lived alone for several years. He _____ alone.
A. used to live B. is used to living
C. is accustomed to living D. Both B & C are correct.
275. My friend Mark _____ with my family, but now he lives alone in his own flat.
A. used to live B. is used to living
C. is accustomed to living D. is used to live
276. My brother rode his bike to work for many years, but now he takes the bus. He _____ his bike to work.
A. used to ride B. is used to ride
C. is used to riding D. is accustomed to riding
277. I stay up later now than I did when I was at college. I _____ to bed at ten, but now I seldom get to bed before midnight.
A. am used to go B. am used to going
C. am accustomed to go D. used to go
278. When Linda was a child, she _____ with dolls with her friends.
A. used to play B. was used to play
C. used to playing D. is used to play
279. I am a vegetarian. I _____ meat, but now I eat only meatless meals.
A. get used to eat B. used to eat
C. am used to eat D. am used to eating

280. My uncle has had a vegetable garden all his life. He _____ his own vegetables.
- A. used to grow B. is used to growing
C. is accustomed to growing D. Both B & C are correct
281. Coal _____ electricity in many parts of the world.
- A. used to produce B. is used to produce
C. used to be produced D. is used to producing
282. Little Tim _____ a bath only once a week, but now he showers every day.
- A. is used to take B. is used to taking
C. used to take D. used to taking
283. My father has lived in Japan for many years. He _____ Japanese food. He doesn't like any other food.
- A. used to eat B. used to eating
C. is used to eating D. is used to eat
284. Georgio moved to Shanghai to open his own restaurant. He _____ a small bakery in Italy.
- A. used to have B. used to having
C. is used to have D. is used to having
285. I have taken the bus to work every day for the past ten years. I _____ the bus to work.
- A. am accustomed to take B. am accustomed to taking
C. am used to take D. used to take
286. Mary travels by plane on company business. She _____ by train, but now the distances she needs to travel are too great.
- A. is used to go B. is used to going
C. used to go D. used to going
287. When I was a boy, I _____ play games with my friends in a big field near my school.
- A. used to B. am used to
C. accustomed to D. am accustomed to
288. Maori and John are from different countries. Maori _____ fish for breakfast; John _____ cheese and bread for breakfast.
- A. used to have / used to have B. is used to having / is used to having
C. used to having / used to having D. is used to have / is used to have
289. My father's job requires him to travel extensively throughout the world. He _____ by plane.
- A. used to travelling B. used to travel
C. is used to travelling D. is used to travel

290. Water from big lakes and rivers _____ hydro-electric power.
 A. used to produce B. is used to produce
 C. used to producing D. is used to producing
291. My sister has lived in Singapore for several years. She _____ consistently warm weather.
 A. used to B. is used to
 C. was used to D. used to living in
292. When I was very young, I _____ whenever my mother took me to school.
 A. was used to cry B. am used to cry
 C. am used to crying D. used to cry
293. In the 17th century, people _____ believe that the world was flat.
 A. were used to B. got used to
 C. used to D. got accustomed to
294. I remember my Aunt Mary very well. Each time she came to my house, she _____ me a big kiss and pinch my cheek.
 A. used to give B. used to giving
 C. was used to giving D. was used to give
295. Trains _____ the main means of travelling long distances. Today, most people take planes for cross-continental travel.
 A. are used to being B. are used to be
 C. used to being D. used to be
296. When I was a boy, I _____ a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read adventure books without my parents' knowing about it.
 A. used to take B. used to taking
 C. was used to take D. got used to take
297. A teacher _____ questions. Students, especially good students, always have a lot of questions.
 A. used to answer B. used to answering
 C. is used to answer D. is used to answering
298. When Linda was a little girl, she _____ be very shy. Whenever a stranger came to her house, she _____ hide behind the door.
 A. used to / was used to B. used to / used to
 C. was used to / was used to D. was used to / used to

5.

GET + PAST PARTICIPLE

(Get + quá khứ phân từ)

5.1. Get thường được dùng thay cho be trong thụ động cách theo lối văn thường đàm:

Luckily I *got accepted* at music school.
Lots of people *got killed* in the demonstration yesterday.
The precious cup *got broken* when we moved house.
How often do children *get injured* during their school age?

Nhưng *get* + quá khứ phân từ *không* được dùng khi nói về những kế hoạch, sự kiện lớn:

The oil industry was nationalized by the new government last year.
*The oil industry *got* nationalized by the new government last year.

5.2 Get thường được dùng trong một số đặc ngữ (idiomatic expressions) như:

They didn't have enough time *to get washed*.
She *got undressed* and jumped into the swimming pool.
They *got divorced* last year, but have still lived in the same house ever since.
This book will tell you what to do if you *get lost* in the city.
He came home late because he *got stuck* in a traffic jam.

5.3 Get (= become) được dùng với một số tính từ có nguồn gốc quá khứ phân từ:

We soon *got bored* because of poor performance.
She *got tired* and went to bed early.
They all *got confused* when they walked into the big hall with hundreds of people inside.

TEST 5.1

Hãy hoàn thành các câu bằng cách ghép các tính từ và quá khứ phân từ thích hợp sau đây vào chỗ trống:

- | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|--------------|----------|
| a. busy | b. dark | c. dizzy | d. dressed | e. dry |
| f. hungry | g. well | h. married | i. sunburned | j. tired |

299. John and Mary are engaged. They are going to get _____.
300. My sister Linda doesn't eat breakfast, so she always gets _____ by ten or ten-thirty.
301. In winter, the sun sets early. It gets _____ outside by six or even earlier.
302. Let's stop working for a while. I'm getting _____. I need to rest.
303. When I stayed out in the sun too long yesterday, I got _____.
304. Put these socks back in the dryer. They didn't get _____ the first time.
305. If you are sick, stay at home and take care of yourself. You won't get _____ if you don't take care of yourself.
306. John is wearing one brown sock and one blue sock today. He got _____ in a hurry this morning and didn't pay attention to the colour of his socks.
307. This work has to be done before we leave. We'd better get _____ and stop wasting time.
308. Some people are afraid of heights. They get _____ and have trouble keeping their balance.

TEST 5.2

Hãy hoàn thành các câu bằng cách ghép các tính từ và quá khứ phân từ thích hợp sau đây vào chỗ trống:

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| a. killed | b. sleepy | c. crowded | d. lost | e. rich |
| f. excited | g. dirty | h. worried | i. involved | j. stolen |

309. Jones was in a terrible car accident and almost got _____. He's lucky to be alive.
310. We were in a strange city without a map. It was easy for us to get _____.
311. Did you get _____ when your team won the game? Did you clap and yell when they won?

312. Good restaurants get _____ around dinner time. It's hard to find a seat because there are so many people.
313. When little Annie got _____, her mother gave her a bottle and put her to bed.
314. Don't waste your money gambling. You won't ever get _____ that way.
315. It's hard to work in a garage and stay clean. John's clothes always get _____ from all the grease and oil.
316. My father was afraid his important papers or his jewellery might get _____, so he had a wall safe installed in his home.
317. Mary has to vacate her apartment next week, and she hasn't found a new place to live. She's getting _____.
318. I left when they began to argue. I never got _____ in other people's quarrels.

6. **HAVE & GET + O + V** (Have & Get + Tân ngữ + động từ)

6.1 **Have + O + infinitive without to:** sai, bảo ai làm gì

I *had* the garage *service* my car.

We *had* the workers *decorate* the living-room.

6.2 **Get + O + to- infinitive:** sai, bảo ai làm gì

I *got* the garage *to service* my car.

We *got* the workers *to decorate* the living-room.

Tân ngữ (O) trong hai mẫu câu trên làm chủ hành động diễn tả bởi động từ nguyên mẫu.

6.3 **Have + O + past participle:** khiến cho cái gì được thực hiện

I *had* my car *serviced*.

John went to the embassy *to have* his visa *renewed*.

6.4 **Get + O + past participle:** khiến cho cái gì được thực hiện

I *got* my car *serviced*.

Tom spilled some ink on his shirt. Now he needs *to get* it *cleaned*.

Tân ngữ (O) trong hai mẫu câu 6.3 và 6.4 nhận chịu hành động do bởi quá khứ phân từ (*serviced* và *cleaned*) diễn tả.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai hình thức của động từ:

*I had the mechanic *to repair* the pump last week.

[Phải viết: I had the mechanic *repair* the pump last week]

*My boss got a security company *fit* a burglar alarm.

[Phải viết: My boss got a security company *to fit* a burglar alarm]

*We are getting a new kitchen *fit*.

[Phải viết: We are getting a new kitchen *fitted*]

- Dùng sai tân ngữ:

*You should have/get the workers done professionally.

[Phải viết: You should have the job done professionally]

TEST 6.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

319. Joe got his sister _____ and washing for him.

A. do the cooking

B. to do the cooking

C. does the cooking

D. to do cooking

320. My tooth is painful. I must go to see the dentist and get it _____.

A. pull out

B. pulled out

C. to pull out

D. pulling out

321. The examiner made _____ our identification in order to be admitted to the test centre.

A. us to show

B. us showed

C. to show

D. us show

322. Do you think that we can get Karen _____ us to the airport tomorrow?

A. take

B. taking

C. to take

D. took

323. My sister Mary likes the way she had the beautician _____ her hair. 3
 A. do B. to do
 C. does D. doing
324. John made his boy _____ the rooms before he could go out to play. 3
 A. wash B. to wash
 C. washes D. washing
325. Are you going to get the puncture _____? 3
 A. to mend B. mended
 C. mending D. to be mended
326. I am going to _____ my dress dry-cleaned. 3
 A. make B. send
 C. have D. take
327. I think you should _____. 3
 A. have your hair be cut B. cut your hair
 C. have your hair cut D. have your have been cut
328. I will _____ my brother repair the bicycle soon. 3
 A. have B. get
 C. be had D. Both A & B are correct.
329. He was very busy. He had no time to wash his car. He _____ it washed. 3
 A. got B. had
 C. Both A & B are correct. D. was getting
330. My sister often _____ them to make new dresses for me. 3
 A. gets B. has
 C. makes D. thanks
331. Mr. Pike has just got his son _____ him a newspaper. 3
 A. to buy B. buy
 C. bought D. buying
332. Did the manager have the accounts _____? 3
 A. to be checked B. to check
 C. checked D. checking
333. The trousers are too long. Are you going to _____ them shortened? 3
 A. have B. get
 C. Both A & B are correct. D. make
334. She can't sharpen the knives herself. She has them _____.
 A. be sharpened B. sharpen
 C. sharpening D. sharpened

335. She had her daughter _____ the meal for the family.
A. prepare B. to repair
C. repairing D. repairs
336. Mary had a bad tooth and decided to have it _____.
A. taken out B. to take out
C. taking out D. be taken out
337. What beautiful curtains! Did you _____ them dyed?
A. have B. get
C. make D. Both A & B are correct.
338. The professor had the class _____ a 5,000-word research paper on water pollution.
A. write B. writes
C. to write D. writing
339. Mary had a terrible headache yesterday, so she got her twin sister _____ to class for her. The teacher didn't know the difference.
A. goes B. go
C. to go D. went
340. My teacher _____ me redo my assignment because he wasn't satisfied with it.
A. asked B. told
C. got D. made
341. Tim stopped at the service station _____ the tank filled.
A. to get B. got
C. to make D. made
342. I got John _____ me some money so I could buy a new hand phone.
A. to lend B. lends
C. lent D. lend
343. When Helen went shopping, she found a skirt that she really liked. After she had it _____, it fit her perfectly.
A. shorten B. shortened
C. to shorten D. be shortened
344. Mr Taylor went to the hospital _____.
A. to remove the benign tumour on his neck
B. to make the benign tumour on his neck removed
C. to have the benign tumour on his neck removed
D. to make the benign tumour on his neck remove

345. We had a professional photographer _____ pictures of everyone who participated in our wedding.
- A. take B. to take
C. took D. takes
346. Teachers sometimes have their students _____ too much homework.
- A. do B. doing
C. to do D. done
347. Tim was supposed to repaint the house, but he didn't want to do it. He was a very clever boy. Somehow he got his friends _____ it for him.
- A. do B. to do
C. did D. doing
348. On Sundays, many people take their cars to service stations _____.
- A. to get the oil refilled B. to get the oil refill
C. to refill the oil D. to make the oil refilled

- **Do:** hoàn thành, thực hiện (accomplish, carry out) một công việc
- **Make:** làm ra, chế tạo ra (produce, manufacture)

Make

Make advances
 Make an announcement
 Make an attempt
 Make the bed
 Make a chair/a cup of coffee etc...
 Make a choice
 Make a comment
 Make a complaint
 Make a comparison
 Make a contribution
 Make a decision
 Make a difference
 Make a distinction
 Make an effort
 Make an excuse
 Make a law
 Make a mistake
 Make progress
 Make a plan
 Make a phone call
 Make a promise
 Make a speech
 Make a sound/a noise
 Make a start
 Make a suggestion
 Make use of

Do

Do an assignment
 Do business (with)
 Do one's best
 Do business
 Do a course
 Do the cleaning
 Do the cooking
 Do a duty
 Do exercises
 Do sb a favour
 Do sb good
 Do gymnastics
 Do harm
 Do homework
 Do housework
 Do a job
 Do a lesson
 Do research
 Do revision
 Do a service
 Do the shopping
 Do a test
 Do the washing
 Do wonders
 Do wrong

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng *do* thay cho *make* và ngược lại:

*The carpenter *did* a chair in the style of the Ming Dynasty.

[Phải dùng *made*]

*You must *make* your duty before you leave.

[Phải dùng đo]

- Dùng *make* thay cho *do* vì bị ảnh hưởng bởi câu trả lời:

*What are you *making*? – I am making a cup of coffee.

[Phải dùng *doing*]

TEST 7.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

349. She _____ her children _____ their homework before watching TV.
A. makes / do
B. forces / do
C. asks / do
D. makes / to do
350. The children have nothing _____. That's why they are noisy.
A. to do
B. to make
C. to work
D. for doing
351. The examiner made us _____ our identification in order to be admitted to the test centre.
A. to show
B. showed
C. showing
D. show
352. My sister often gets them _____ new dresses for me.
A. make
B. do
C. to make
D. to do
353. Are you going to make your son _____ part-time in the store this summer?
A. work
B. to work
C. working
D. works

354. At first, Carlos thought English was impossible but now he's _____.
 A. do progress B. making progress
 C. doing to progress D. makes progress
355. Can I _____ about lunch? Why don't we phone for pizzas?
 A. suggest B. make a suggest
 C. do a suggestion D. make a suggestion
356. Can you _____?
 A. make yourself being understood B. make yourself understand
 C. be made understand D. make yourself understood
357. Do you mind waiting five minutes? I have to _____.
 A. do a quick phone call B. perform a quick phone call
 C. realize a quick phone call D. make a quick phone call
358. Don't _____! If you were more organized you would not be late.
 A. make excuses B. do excuses
 C. do excuse D. make excuse
359. Fresh air and regular exercise always _____.
 A. does you good B. makes you good
 C. does you well D. makes you well
360. We were in a hurry so we had to _____.
 A. make do with a quick snack B. do with a quick snack
 C. make a quick snack D. make with a quick snack
361. He made a big decision. He _____.
 A. thought about it B. made up his mind
 C. changed his mind D. made a wish
362. He never _____ for the future; he just lives from hand to mouth.
 A. makes any provision B. make any prepare
 C. makes up D. made prepare
363. John couldn't sleep for several nights because of the noise. He decided to _____ against his neighbour.
 A. do a complaint B. make a complaint
 C. do complain D. make complain
364. I'll _____ for you.
 A. do the translation B. make any translation
 C. do translate D. make translatment
365. In Britain, young men don't have to _____.
 A. do military service B. realize military service
 C. take military service D. make military service

366. We use cotton to _____.
 A. create clothes B. do clothes
 C. make clothes D. perform clothes
367. It's getting late; we'd better _____.
 A. reach home B. arrive at home
 C. make for home D. depart for home
368. Many universities receive grants _____ research for the central government.
 A. to do B. to make
 C. to perform D. to realize
369. Next summer, we'd like to _____ in Perugia.
 A. do an Italian course B. enter an Italian course
 C. make an Italian course D. perform an Italian course
370. Our company _____ with European Union countries.
 A. makes most of its business B. does most of its business
 C. makes business D. do business
371. Filmmakers have _____ many advances in the production of motion pictures.
 A. made B. done
 C. performed D. contributed
372. She _____ at university, but then she decided to give up the course.
 A. did a year B. did learn
 C. did a learning D. made a learning
373. She _____ at Harvard University.
 A. did economics B. did economic
 C. did a learning of economics D. study an economics
374. The tips of this drill are _____ of tungsten steel and contain diamonds.
 A. produced B. done
 C. made D. created
375. She spent an hour _____ before the party.
 A. to make herself up B. make herself up
 C. making herself D. making herself up
376. Changing schools has _____ a big difference to her life.
 A. created B. done
 C. made D. led
377. The tall man _____ my camera while I wasn't looking.
 A. make off B. make up for
 C. do away with D. made off with
378. We have _____ on tenses lately and we now understand most of the rules.
 A. made a lot of work B. proceeded a lot of work
 C. realized a lot of work D. done a lot of work

ASSIGNMENT 1

PART A

Choose the one word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. A cupful of stagnant water may _____ millions of microorganisms.
A. contains B. to contain
C. contain D. containing
2. Linda promised to show me the dress she _____ the day before.
A. bought B. has bought
C. had bought D. buying
3. Mary looked everywhere for John, who was _____ before she did.
A. arriving B. to arrive
C. to be arriving D. to have arrived
4. Mary wants to know whether her new dress _____.
A. is delivered B. has been delivered
C. had been delivered D. to have been delivered
5. I have always been told that a rolling stone _____ no moss.
A. gathers B. gathering
C. would gather D. gathered
6. Bill had always hoped _____ Mount Everest.
A. to climb B. climbed
C. to have climbed D. climbing
7. Since the new administration came into office our city _____ steady progress.
A. has shown B. showed
C. had shown D. is showing
8. Mr Brown is pleased to see that the football team _____ so well.
A. done B. doing
C. has done D. had done
9. John couldn't sleep for several nights because of the noise. He decided to _____ against his neighbour.
A. do a complaint B. make a complaint
C. do complain D. make complain

10. John _____ the proprietor of this store for the past twenty years.
 A. is B. was
 C. has been D. had been
11. The examiner made us _____ our identification in order to be admitted to the test centre.
 A. to show B. showed
 C. showing D. show
12. It soon became apparent that the cast _____ enough rehearsals.
 A. does not have B. has not had
 C. hasn't got D. had not had
13. Modems permit computers _____ with one another over telephone lines.
 A. communicate B. to communicate
 C. communicating D. communication
14. I still find driving in Britain quite difficult. I'll never _____ driving on the left.
 A. use to B. used to
 C. accustomed to D. get used to
15. You were mad to drive here on these slippery roads. You _____ an accident.
 A. could have had B. must have had
 C. should have had D. ought to have
16. The postman came and collected the parcel, so we _____ them to the post office.
 A. didn't need to take B. haven't got to take
 C. mustn't take D. mustn't have taken
17. They are going to ban photography at the exhibition next week, so don't bother to take your camera. You _____ to take photos.
 A. can't be allowed B. won't be allowed
 C. shouldn't be allowed D. couldn't be allowed
18. My uncle has had a vegetable garden all his life. He _____ his own vegetables.
 A. used to grow B. is used to growing
 C. is accustomed to growing D. Both B & C are correct.
19. We had a professional photographer _____ pictures of everyone who participated in our wedding.
 A. take B. to take
 C. took D. takes
20. He was tired so he _____ to lie down for a little while.
 A. decides B. decided
 C. will decide D. has deciding

21. The breakdown service arrived five minutes after he _____.
A. phoned B. was phoning
C. had phoned D. had been phoning
22. Ann didn't have enough money for a ticket, but luckily she _____ borrow some from a friend.
A. might B. could
C. may D. was able to
23. The two robbers have been arrested and _____ in court tomorrow.
A. appeared B. will appear
C. will be appeared D. to appear
24. New words are constantly being invented _____ new objects and concepts.
A. for describing B. describing
C. to describe D. describe
25. Do you have any objection _____ your fingerprints?
A. to the police to take B. to the police taking
C. with the police to take D. with the police taking
26. The old building suddenly collapsed one day. Luckily the owner wasn't in there or he _____ killed.
A. can be B. could be
C. could have been D. can have been
27. Tim has switched his mobile off. He _____ a shower or something.
A. can have B. may have
C. must have D. may be having
28. In the last two decades, space exploration _____ great contributions to weather forecasting.
A. is making B. has made
C. made D. makes
29. Peter went out for two hours. When he returned I asked him where _____.
A. had he been B. he had been
C. has he been D. he has been
30. When boarding the plane, many passengers were annoyed because they _____ waiting in the airport for three and a half hours.
A. are B. were
C. have been D. had been

PART B

Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct.

31. What makes you think that Nancy wanted to have gone to the movies with us?

A

B

C

D

32. A few inches from the diver's eyes, the strange fish swum along the ocean

A

B

C

bottom.

D

33. One of the most important steps in produce a motion picture is film editing.

A

B

C

D

34. Smells can be more effective than any other sensory stimuli in vividly bring

A

B

C

back memories.

D

35. The distinction between wildflowers and weeds is one that is often difficult to do.

A

B

C

D

36. Alexander Pushkin managed writing great stories despite being surrounded by

A

B

C

spies and censored by the czar.

D

37. Ken does lots of mistakes, but he never seems to learn from them.

A

B

C

D

38. After they did what they set out to do, the members of the expedition turned

A

B

C

their thought to home.

D

39. The environmentalists in many countries hope restoring the forest to its former

A

B

C

D

condition.

40. We have discussed your proposal, and we are pleased about accept it.

A

B

C

D

41. The film at the Odeon seems familiar to me. I might see it before.
A B C D
42. It was such an awful moment that I came close to burst into tears.
A B C D
43. I knew there were exactly fifty names on the list because I have counted them
A B C D
carefully.
44. Actually I am not caring who's going to win the final football game tonight.
A B C D
45. Fishing cats, found in Southeast Asia, are distinguished by their webbed feet
A B
that enable them catching fish.
C D
46. Hollywood, which is the movie centre of the world, has been accused of
A B
producing fiction that misrepresenting life.
C D
47. The journey didn't look far on the map, but actually it took me much longer than
A B C
I have expected.
D
48. The art of sculpture differs from the art of painting because it includes the
A B C
added dimension of the depth, which called the third dimension.
D
49. Ever since atomic power was developed, the world experienced periods of
A B C
hope and fear.
D
50. *Sputnik* is a word which became known all over the world when the first
A B
satellite has been thrust into orbit in 1957.
C D

51. You should postpone to see the manager until we hear the outcome of
 A B C
tomorrow's meeting.
 D
52. Terry always makes his best for the team, but he isn't really a very good player.
 A B C D
53. International, political, and cultural forums are holding throughout the year
 A B C
at the new convention centre.
 D
54. Sigmund Freud did fundamental contributions to both the theory and fieldwork
 A B C D
 of psychology.
55. The traffic situation had become so difficult that the authorities decide to
 A B C
 change the roads in the downtown area to one-way.
 D
56. Dr. Mary Walker, a surgeon in the army during the Civil War, was the first,
 A B C
 and so far only woman that awarded the Medal of Honor.
 D
57. The *Nautilus*, man's first atom-power submarine, reminding me of the novel
 A B C D
Twenty Thousand Leagues under the Sea.
58. When the United Nations was established, it has been agreed that disputes
 A B C
 between nations would be settled through international agreement.
 D
59. In 1970, a Canadian scientist proved that warm water froze more quickly than
 A B C
 cold water.
 D
60. Because my taste in music changed since I was young, I now enjoy both
 A B C D
 classical and popular music.

8. ACTION VERBS & STATE VERBS (Các động từ chỉ hành động và trạng thái)

8.1 Action verbs là các động từ chỉ hành động như *go, buy, eat, stop, realize...* Các động từ chỉ hành động này có thể bao gồm các hoạt động của tay chân như *swim, walk...*; của lời nói như *say, report...*; hoặc của nhận thức như *decide, expect, think...*

Các động từ chỉ hành động có thể kết hợp với *-ing* để tạo thành các thì tiếp diễn (progressive tenses).

8.2 State verbs là các động từ chỉ trạng thái, sự không biến đổi hoặc di chuyển như *be, have, seem, consist, exist, possess, contain, belong...*; các hoạt động tinh cảm như *like, love, hate...*; hoạt động tri thức như *know, understand, believe...*

Các động từ chỉ trạng thái **không thể** kết hợp với *-ing* để tạo thành các thì tiếp diễn (progressive tenses). Những câu sau đây **sai** vì các động từ thuộc loại state verbs:

*We are having a nice house.

*I am thinking that we should accept it.

Tuy nhiên, một số động từ chỉ trạng thái khi mang nghĩa khác lại trở thành động từ chỉ hành động. Khi đó, chúng có thể dùng với các thì tiếp diễn:

STATE VERBS	ACTION VERBS
He <i>is</i> very witty.	He <i>is being</i> very witty. (= speaking in a very witty manner)
We <i>have</i> a beautiful garden.	We're <i>having</i> breakfast. (= eating)
I <i>think</i> we should go now.	I <i>am thinking</i> about the new proposal. (= considering)
I <i>expect</i> so.	They're <i>expecting</i> trouble. (= waiting for)
The picture <i>looks</i> beautiful.	We <i>are looking</i> at the picture. (= directing our eyes at)
This flower <i>smells</i> very strange.	I <i>am smelling</i> these new perfumes. (= sniff, use my nose)
He <i>appeared</i> excited.	He's <i>appearing</i> in a film. (= playing a part)
I <i>love</i> holidays.	I <i>am loving</i> every minute of this holiday. (= enjoying)
I hope you don't <i>mind</i> the noise.	Mary <i>is minding</i> the baby while we are out. (= taking care of)

8.3 Một số động từ ở dạng phân từ (participle) cũng là động từ chỉ trạng thái. Đây là các động từ về mặt hình thức giống với Thụ động cách nhưng không thể chuyển đổi sang câu chủ động tương đương:

- (a) The boy *closed* the door a moment ago.
- (b) The door *was closed* by the boy a moment ago.
- (c) Now the door is *closed*.

- (a) John *broke* the vase this morning.
- (b) The vase *was broken* by John this morning.
- (c) Now the vase is *broken*.

Các động từ (*closed*, *broke*) trong câu (a) là các động từ chỉ hành động. Chúng có các hình thức thụ động tương đương như trong (b), với "by" là giới từ chỉ tác nhân của hành động. Các câu (c) không phải là câu thụ động; chúng chứa động từ *be* + hình thức tương tự như quá khứ phân từ (*closed*, *broken*) nhưng thật ra đó chỉ là những phân từ chỉ trạng thái, có chức năng như tính từ mà thôi.

TEST 8.1

Hãy hoàn thành các câu sau bằng cách điền các hình thức động từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 379. The Taylors left for America this morning. I _____ whether they are travelling by air or by train. | a) wonder
b) am wondering |
| 380. The house _____ unpleasant because we are having it repainted. | c) smells
d) is smelling |
| 381. Look outside! It _____. Everything is beautiful and all white. | e) snows
f) is snowing |
| 382. "What kind of tea do you like?" – "Well, I'm drinking black tea, but I _____ green tea." | g) prefer
h) am preferring |
| 383. Thank you for your help in arithmetic. Now I _____ that problem. | i) understand
j) am understanding |
| 384. My dog usually barks at the postman – but look at that! For once he _____ friendly to the poor man. | k) is
l) is being |

385. I don't like garlic when I _____ it, but I love it when I _____ it. m) smell/taste
n) am smelling/am tasting
386. This magazine isn't mine. It _____ my sister. o) belongs to
p) is belonging to
387. "Where are the children?" – "They _____ a game outside in the street." q) play
r) are playing
388. This gallery _____ a number of 19th century artists' famous works. s) possesses
t) is possessing

TEST 8.2

Hãy hoàn thành các câu bằng cách điền các tính từ có hình thức phân từ sau đây vào chỗ trống thích hợp:

- a. boring b. surprised c. disappointed d. broken e. qualified
f. worried g. satisfied h. acquainted i. exhausted j. scared

389. We always leave a light on in our daughter's bed at night because she is _____ of the dark.
390. John isn't doing well in the exams this school year. He is _____ about his grades.
391. I am going to go to bed early tonight. It's been a long, hard trip. I feel _____.
392. The people around the apartment building were very _____ when they saw Tom in an expensive car.
393. I didn't want to read that book any more because I found it so _____.
394. Tommy is _____. I have promised to take him to the show this afternoon but now I can't go because I have an important meeting with my boss.
395. My television doesn't work. I think it is _____.
396. My sister isn't _____ with her present apartment. She's looking for a new one.
397. Are you _____ with that author? I think his books are very interesting.
398. According to the job description, an applicant must have a M.A. degree and at least three years of teaching experience. Unfortunately, I am not _____ for that job.

9.

PHRASAL VERBS

(Động từ cụm)

9.1 Động từ cụm là cụm động từ kết hợp bởi **động từ + giới từ** (hoặc phó từ). Chúng thường có nghĩa khác với nghĩa của các thành phần tạo ra chúng. Ví dụ:

turn down (bác bỏ)

break down (hỏng máy)

give up (từ bỏ)

show off (khoe khoang)

9.2 Động từ cụm được chia làm hai loại:

(i) Động từ cụm tách ra được (seperable phrasal verbs): là các động từ cụm cho phép tân ngữ chen vào giữa.

We put out the fire.

We put the fire out.

We put it out. [Không được nói: *We put out it.]

(ii) Động từ cụm không tách ra được (inseperable phrasal verbs): là các động từ cụm không cho phép tân ngữ chen vào giữa, dù tân ngữ là danh từ hoặc đại từ.

We should go over the whole project.

We should go over it.

*We should go the whole project over.

*We should go it over.

9.3 Một số động từ cụm thông dụng:

Động từ cụm	Nghĩa	Động từ cụm	Nghĩa
abide by	<i>tuân theo</i>	go under	<i>phá sản</i>
account for	<i>giải thích</i>	hand in	<i>nộp</i>
agree with	<i>đồng ý</i>	interfere with	<i>cản trở</i>
amount to	<i>lên đến</i>	laugh at	<i>chế nhạo</i>
approve of	<i>tán thành</i>	leave behind	<i>để lại</i>
ask for	<i>yêu cầu</i>	let down	<i>làm thất vọng</i>
belong to	<i>thuộc về</i>	look after	<i>chăm sóc</i>
break down	<i>hỏng máy</i>	look out	<i>coi chừng</i>
break into	<i>đột nhập</i>	look forward to	<i>ngóng đợi</i>
bring about	<i>mang lại</i>	look up	<i>tra cứu</i>

bring up	<i>nuôi dưỡng</i>	make up	<i>tạo thành</i>
build up	<i>tích lũy</i>	provide with	<i>cung cấp</i>
call on	<i>thăm viếng</i>	put off	<i>hoãn lại</i>
catch up with	<i>đuổi kịp</i>	put up with	<i>chịu đựng</i>
cater for	<i>phục vụ</i>	put out	<i>dập tắt</i>
check in	<i>làm thủ tục vào</i>	quarrel with	<i>cãi lộn</i>
check out	<i>làm thủ tục ra</i>	relate to	<i>liên hệ đến</i>
close down	<i>đẹp tiệm</i>	rely on	<i>tùy thuộc vào</i>
come across	<i>tình cờ gặp</i>	show off	<i>khoe khoang</i>
deal with	<i>xử lí</i>	show up	<i>xuất hiện</i>
depend on	<i>tùy thuộc vào</i>	take after	<i>trông giống</i>
get on/along	<i>hoà thuận</i>	take off	<i>cất cánh</i>
drop in	<i>tạt vào thăm</i>	turn in	<i>giao nộp</i>
finish off	<i>kết thúc</i>	turn out	<i>tắt</i>
give up	<i>bỏ</i>	turn up	<i>đến</i>
go over	<i>xem xét kĩ</i>	write off	<i>làm hỏng nát</i>

9.4 Các giới từ và phó từ thông dụng trong động từ cụm:

Các động từ cụm thường có nghĩa khác với nghĩa của các thành phần tạo ra chúng. Tuy nhiên, điều đó không có nghĩa chúng ta luôn luôn phải học thuộc lòng nghĩa của từng động từ cụm. Nếu chúng ta đã biết nghĩa của *call sb back* là "gọi lại cho ai", chúng ta có thể đoán được rằng *phone sb back* và *ring sb back* cũng có nghĩa tương tự. Do đó, việc nắm vững nghĩa của các phó từ thông dụng sẽ giúp chúng ta dễ dàng đoán được nghĩa của một số động từ cụm trong tiếng Anh.

down (xuống đất):

knock him down, pull down a building; burn down a house; cut down a tree

down (lên giấy):

write down the number; copy down an address, note down a lecture, take down a message

down (giảm bớt):

turn down the volume; slow down; (a fire) that died down

down (ngừng hoạt động hoàn toàn)

a car that broke down, a factory that closed down

off (lìa khỏi)

set off on a journey; a plane that took off, a book cover that comes off, see a friend off at the airport; take a day off, sell goods off cheaply

off (làm gián đoạn)

turn off / switch off the television; cut off the electricity; ring off

on (mặc, mang vào)

have a shirt on; put my shoes on; try a coat on

on (tiếp tục)

keep on doing something; work on late; hang on / hold on; the noise that goes on and on

on (kết nối)

turn on / switch on the light; leave the radio on

out (làm biến mất)

put out a fire; blow out a candle; wipe out all the data; cross out a word

out (hoàn toàn, đến hết)

clean out a kitchen; fill out a form; work out the answer; write out in full; shoes that wear out; sort out the mess

out (phân phát)

give out / hand out copies of a thesis; share out the food between them

out (lớn giọng)

read out all the names; shout out; cry out; speak out

out (rõ ràng)

make out the words; point out a mistake; pick out the best

over (từ đầu đến cuối)

read over / check over what he has written; think over / talk over a problem; go over a report

up (làm gia tăng)

step up production; turn up the volume; blow up / pump up a tyre

up (hoàn toàn, hết sạch)

eat / drink it up; use up all the food; clear up / tidy up the mess; pack up a suitcase; lock up before leaving; cut up into pieces; sum up a situation

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai giới từ hoặc phó từ:

*They complained with their neighbours about the noise.

[Phải dùng *to* thay cho *with*]

*I've kept you waiting. Sorry for that.

[Phải dùng *about* thay cho *for*. Chúng ta nói 'sorry about sth' nhưng 'sorry for doing sth']

- Dùng sai vị trí của phó từ/giới từ:

We put off our trip.

*We put off it.

[Phải nói "We put it off"]

TEST 9.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

399. Could you _____ a moment while I see if Peter is in his office?
A. get on well B. get on
C. hold on D. stand on
400. Extension 286? I'll _____.
A. put you through B. get you through
C. come you through D. break into you
401. For me, the film didn't _____ all the enthusiastic publicity it received.
A. come up B. live up
C. turn up to D. live up to
402. Jack and Linda _____ last week. They just weren't happy together.
A. broke up B. broke into
C. finished off D. ended up
403. I'm _____ Tom's address. Do you know it?
A. looking on B. finding out
C. looking for D. getting for

404. I can _____ with most things but I can't stand noisy children.
 A. put aside B. put on
 C. put up D. put off
405. If we don't do something now, the birds are going to _____ soon.
 A. die of B. die with
 C. die out D. die on
406. If you really want to lose weight, you need to _____ eating desserts.
 A. give away B. give up
 C. put off D. take off
407. I had to _____ her request for a loan. Her credit was just not good enough.
 A. turn on B. turn off
 C. turn down D. turn into
408. I need to _____ from work and take a holiday.
 A. go away B. get away
 C. relax on D. run on
409. It _____ to be a beautiful night tonight!
 A. turned into B. turned out
 C. turned on D. turned off
410. I want you to _____ every bad word you've said about my brother.
 A. take back B. say again
 C. take off D. give off
411. When I was turning out my cupboard I _____ this photograph of my uncle.
 A. came over B. came round
 C. came across D. came into
412. He _____ in Germany, but moved to the US at the age of 18.
 A. brought to B. grew up
 C. turned off D. went to
413. He _____ the club on recommendation from his friend Jack.
 A. got in B. got on
 C. got by D. got into
414. He _____ unleaded gas and left on his journey.
 A. poured on B. filled up with
 C. filled up D. poured with
415. He spent the entire night thinking and in the end _____ a brilliant idea.
 A. received with B. got up
 C. came up with D. came out

416. We're not ready yet, we are going to have to _____ the meeting until next week.
- A. take off B. put off
C. take on D. go off
417. Let's _____ the grammar one more time before the test.
- A. go through B. come over
C. go on D. go over
418. Look Jack, I've _____ your bad behavior long enough!
- A. put up B. put through
C. put up with D. get on well
419. Make sure to _____ pick-pockets when you go to the market.
- A. watch out for B. come along
C. take to D. look at
420. My sister _____ my cats while I was away on vacation.
- A. looked after B. looked for
C. looked at D. looked on
421. Our flight was delayed, but we finally _____ shortly after midnight.
- A. took off B. took on
C. took up D. put off
422. Our school _____ for the summer holidays on the 10th of July.
- A. breaks up B. breaks down
C. breaks off D. breaks in
423. She promised to _____ her cigarette smoking to five a day.
- A. cut down B. give up
C. give away D. cut up
424. The bus only stops here to _____ passengers.
- A. get off B. pick up
C. alight D. get on
425. The child was _____ by a lorry on the safety crossing in the main street.
- A. knocked out B. knocked down
C. run out D. run across
426. The exact questions she had prepared perfect answers for _____ in the exam.
- A. came out B. came in
C. came through D. came up
427. There is just too much work to be done. We'll have to _____ some new employees.
- A. get on B. take on
C. take off D. get off

428. We'd better stop soon. Otherwise, we'll _____ of gas.

A. run out

B. go off

C. get off

D. get on

TEST 9.2

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

429. We _____ at six in the morning on our drive to the Grand Canyon.

A. set off

B. take off

C. go off

D. run off

430. When I was staying in Germany last year, I _____ quite a lot of German.

A. picked up

B. picked over

C. picked out

D. picked on

431. After Joe's mother died, he was _____ up by his grandmother.

A. brought

B. taken

C. grown

D. drawn

432. Unfortunately, I had to _____ Bob for his poor performance.

A. tell off

B. shout at

C. tell about

D. talk to

433. Unfortunately, our school had to _____ the music department because of lack of funds.

A. give up

B. do away with

C. get away

D. take back

434. We are going for a drink now. Why don't you _____?

A. follow up

B. follow after

C. come along

D. come with

435. When you go to New York, _____ the bad restaurants offering cheap food.

A. look for

B. look out for

C. look head

D. look on

436. Don't worry about trying to catch the last train home, as we can easily _____ you up for the night.

A. take

B. set

C. put

D. keep

437. I am late because my alarm clock didn't _____ this morning.

A. come on

B. ring out

C. go off

D. turn on

438. He furiously told the beggar to _____.
 A. clear up B. clear off
 C. clear away D. clear after
439. He tried to join the army but he was _____ because of his poor health.
 A. tried out B. put out
 C. turned off D. turned down
440. I was very unlucky. My car was _____ on my way home.
 A. broke B. broken off
 C. broken D. broken down
441. Many elderly people have to live on the money they _____ when they were working.
 A. laid up B. put back
 C. set up D. put aside
442. Old Mr. Brown's condition looks very serious and it is doubtful if he will _____.
 A. pull through B. pull up
 C. pull back D. pull out
443. The police disturbed a gang of men who were _____ a chemist's in Central London last night.
 A. breaking into B. breaking out
 C. getting through D. talking over
444. A new study group has been _____ by the United Nations.
 A. set up B. set on
 C. put up D. put on
445. All his plans for starting his business fell _____.
 A. in B. through
 C. down D. away
446. Come _____, children! Get your coats on or you'll be late for school.
 A. along B. to
 C. across D. over
447. Don't _____ up yet, you will soon be able to play the trumpet well.
 A. give B. catch
 C. break D. turn
448. If it's raining tomorrow, we shall have to put _____ the match till Sunday.
 A. off B. away
 C. in D. on

449. He drives so quickly that I am afraid that one day he will _____ someone crossing the street.
A. crash down B. knock down
C. turn over D. come across
450. I'll call _____ you at 6 o'clock.
A. for B. by
C. up D. in
451. He kept his marriage a secret for years, but eventually the truth _____.
A. went in B. went off
C. came out D. came through
452. He took the trouble to write _____ the complete list for us.
A. on B. through
C. off D. out
453. He wanted to _____ off all his work before he came to the cinema with us.
A. finish B. stop
C. end D. put
454. Hello. Is that 956782? Please put me _____ to the manager.
A. across B. up
C. over D. through
455. His father's death was a terrible shock and it took him a long time to _____ it.
A. get round B. come through
C. go over D. get over
456. I can't _____ what he's doing; it's so dark down there.
A. see through B. make out
C. look into D. show up
457. I remember Alice as a spotty girl but she's turned _____ a beautiful woman.
A. to B. in
C. into D. on
458. I saw a thief take Tom's wallet so I ran _____ him, but I couldn't catch him.
A. into B. over
C. near D. after

e

in

- f

469. The bus only stops here to _____ passengers.
A. alight B. get on
C. get off D. pick up
470. The butcher cut some steak, _____ it up and handed it to me.
A. closed B. wound
C. strung D. wrapped
471. The child was _____ by a lorry on the safety crossing in the main street.
A. knocked down B. knocked out
C. run across D. run out
472. The completion of the tunnel has been held _____ owing to a strike.
A. on B. off
C. over D. up
473. The doctor advised me not to take _____ so much work in the future.
A. to B. over
C. after D. on
474. The doctor says I'll take a long time to get _____ the shock.
A. past B. above
C. through D. over
475. The meeting had to be put _____ until a later date.
A. away B. on
C. off D. up
476. The police have warned tourists to look _____ for pickpockets in the town centre.
A. out B. up
C. down D. forward
477. Their aim is to _____ up a new political party.
A. strike B. stand
C. set D. show
478. There was a big hole in the road which _____ the traffic.
A. kept down B. held up
C. stood back D. sent back
479. These old houses are going to be _____ soon.
A. laid out B. run down
C. knocked out D. pulled down
480. If you want to join this club, you must _____ this application form.
A. make up B. write down
C. do up D. fill in

481. It's high time Bill got a steady job and _____. He's almost thirty.
A. settled in B. settled down
C. turned in D. turned down
482. My daughter often _____ to see me at least once a week.
A. calls up B. drops in
C. goes up D. comes on
483. They had never come _____ such a beautiful little village before.
A. at B. across
C. off D. back
484. They've _____ a new tower where that old building used to be.
A. put up B. put down
C. pushed up D. pushed down
485. We need to go to the market because we have _____ sugar this morning.
A. shortened of B. come short of
C. run out of D. finished off
486. When my tea cup is empty, I fill it _____ again if I'm still thirsty.
A. out B. on
C. over D. up
487. Paul poured some water on the campfire to put it _____.
A. out B. down
C. aside D. off
488. They said the woman was so ill that it seemed unlikely she would _____.
A. take up B. get off
C. pull through D. come up
489. The children playing near the gate of the building were told to _____ by the guards.
A. go off B. clear off
C. get away D. get out
490. According to the fairy tale, the handsome prince was _____ a frog by the witch.
A. turned into B. come into
C. fed up with D. fed into

10. SUBJUNCTIVE VERBS

(Động từ giả định)

- 10.1 Hình thức:** Động từ giả định có hình thức của động từ nguyên mẫu không *to* (infinitive without *to*):

I be, you be, he be, she be, we be, they be

I go, you go, he go, she go, we go, they go

- 10.2 Cách dùng:** Động từ giả định được dùng trong mệnh đề với *that* và theo sau một số động từ, cụm từ hoặc danh từ sau đây để diễn tả sự cần thiết phải thực hiện một hành động nào đó. Các động từ giả định được dùng sau:

(i) các động từ:

ask (yêu cầu)	request (yêu cầu)
command (ra lệnh)	require (đòi hỏi)
decree (ra sắc lệnh)	recommend (khuyến cáo)
demand (đòi hỏi)	stipulate (quy định)
insist (đòi)	suggest (đề nghị)
propose (đề nghị)	urge (thúc giục)

The doctor suggested that she *give up* smoking.

The student advisor recommended that she *study* more English before enrolling at the university.

(ii) các cụm từ:

It is important that...	} Điều quan trọng là...
It is essential that...	
It is vital that...	
It is necessary that...	Điều cần thiết là...
It is obligatory that...	Điều bắt buộc là...
It is urgent that...	Điều khẩn cấp là...
It is imperative that...	Điều khẩn yếu là...

It is important that she *meet* the doctor immediately.

It is essential that every child *have* the same educational opportunities.

- (iii) những danh từ có cùng nguồn gốc với các động từ kể trên:** demand, insistence, proposal, recommendation...

The terrorist's demand that the airline *provide* a plane will not be met.

The recommendation that all people *be evacuated* was approved.

Chúng ta cần chú ý trong tiếng Anh của người Anh (British English), cách dùng trên đây thường được thay bằng *should* + động từ, đặc biệt sau động từ *suggest* và *recommend*:

It is important that she *should* meet the doctor immediately.

We suggested that he *should* see a doctor at once.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Không dùng subjunctive verbs khi cần thiết:

*The doctor suggested that she *must give up* smoking.

[Phải dùng *give up* thay cho *must give up*]

*It is not necessary that he *must take* an entrance examination to be admitted to an American university.

[Phải dùng *take* thay cho *must take*]

- Dùng sai mẫu câu của động từ:

*I suggest him *to see* a lawyer.

[Phải sửa là: I suggest that he *see* a lawyer]

*We proposed that the law *to be abolished*.

[Phải sửa là: We proposed that the law *be abolished*]

TEST 10.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

491. It is important that he _____ well in his exam.

A. does

B. did

C. do

D. will do

492. I requested that he _____ because he was making so much noise.

A. should have left

B. must have left

C. should leave

D. would leave

493. It's necessary that the train _____ on time.
A. is B. will be
C. would be D. be
494. Rosa suggested _____ a suit and tie when he went for the interview.
A. him to wear B. he wear
C. he must wear D. that he wears
495. She urged that her husband _____ the letter.
A. write B. wrote
C. had written D. has written
496. The doctor recommended that John _____ for a couple of days.
A. could rest B. might rest
C. must rest D. rest
497. The officer demanded that the soldiers _____ the hill.
A. captured B. would capture
C. had captured D. capture
498. We suggested that she _____ the 10:30 train immediately.
A. take B. may take
C. might catch D. has to catch
499. Our teacher insists that we _____ more careful in our writing.
A. are B. were
C. would be D. be
500. The local council recommended that John _____ to the head of the department.
A. is appointed B. was appointed
C. be appointed D. could be appointed
501. It is important that he _____ to the director of the programme.
A. must speak B. speak
C. would speak D. speaks
502. His advisor recommended that he _____ at least three courses each semester.
A. takes B. can take
C. should take D. would take
503. I requested that first-year students _____ to change their courses in the first two weeks.
A. would be permitted B. be permitted
C. were permitted D. are permitted

504. It was such a beautiful evening that one of us suggested we _____ the meeting outside.
A. could have B. had
C. might have D. have
505. Linda insisted that the newly-born baby _____ after her husband's father.
A. could be named B. be named
C. must be named D. ought to be named
506. The recommendation that all people affected by the storm _____ immediately was approved.
A. must be evacuated B. be evacuated
C. ought to be evacuated D. had to be evacuated
507. The director recommended that all the staff _____ anyone outside the company during the training session.
A. must not contact B. cannot contact
C. do not contact D. not contact
508. The students requested that the test _____, but the professor decided against a postponement.
A. be postponed B. must be postponed
C. postponed D. could be postponed
509. It is essential that pollution _____ and eventually _____.
A. must be controlled / must be eliminated
B. be controlled / be eliminated
C. is controlled / is eliminated
D. Both B and C are correct.
510. The movie director insisted that everything about his productions _____ authentic.
A. would be B. is
C. can be D. be
511. It is the recommendation of the consultants that the patient _____ under medical supervision.
A. treating B. treated
C. be treated D. is treated
512. It is vital that no one else _____ about the secret military operation near the border.
A. know B. knows
C. can know D. could know

513. The manager asked that we _____ sure to lock all the doors before we left.
A. were B. would be
C. be D. must be
514. It is essential that no one _____ to the meeting hall without proper identification.
A. is admitted B. can be admitted
C. be admitted D. admitted
515. It is important that you _____ late.
A. not be B. will not be
C. are not D. be not
516. The City Planning Department proposed that the new highway _____ in the fiscal year 2007.
A. be built B. will be built
C. would be built D. is to be built
517. It is essential that vitamins _____ either by foods or by supplementary tablets.
A. are supplied B. be supplied
C. can be supplied D. supplied
518. It is imperative that everyone _____ home immediately.
A. must return B. return
C. returns D. to return
519. It is not necessary that he _____ an entrance examination to be admitted to an American university.
A. take B. takes
C. must take D. be taking
520. The law requires that everyone _____ his car checked at least once a year.
A. has B. have
C. must have D. be having

11. I WISH, IF ONLY & UNREAL PAST

11.1 I wish diễn tả mong ước không hoặc chưa tồn tại trong thực tế, do đó động từ trong mệnh đề theo sau không theo cách diễn đạt thông thường mà "lùi" về quá khứ một bậc:

(I am not rich)	➔	I wish I was/were rich.
(You do not work hard)	➔	I wish you worked harder.
(I can't speak Chinese)	➔	I wish I could speak Chinese.
(She will not tell me)	➔	I wish she would tell me.
(It is raining now)	➔	I wish it wasn't/weren't raining now.
(He came late)	➔	I wish he hadn't come late.
(I couldn't come)	➔	I wish I could have come .
(She has lost her watch)	➔	I wish she hadn't lost her watch.

11.2 If only (ước gì)

- **If only + Simple Present** hoặc **Simple Future** dùng để diễn tả sự hi vọng:

If only he *comes* in time.

If only he *will listen* to Mother.

- **If only + Simple Past** hoặc **would** dùng để diễn tả mong ước không thể thực hiện trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai:

If only I *knew* her name.

If only he *would* stop making noise every night.

- **If only + Past Perfect** dùng để diễn tả mong ước đã không thể thực hiện trong quá khứ:

If only she *hadn't gone* by train on that day.

11.3 As if/ As though (như là)

- **as if/ as though** + thì phù hợp với cách dùng thông thường để diễn tả sự việc có thể diễn ra:

I feel as if everyone *is laughing* behind my back.

[Dùng Present Continuous cho hành động có thể đang diễn ra ở hiện tại]

Mary looked as if she *was* asleep.

[Dùng Simple Past cho sự việc có thể đã diễn ra trong quá khứ.]

It looks as if it *will rain* before morning.

[Dùng Simple Future cho hành động có thể sẽ diễn ra trong tương lai]

- **as if/ as though** + thì lùi về quá khứ một bậc để diễn tả sự việc không hoặc khó có thể diễn ra:

He always talks as if he *knew* everything.

[Dùng Simple Past cho sự việc không thể có ở hiện tại]

You look as if you *had seen* a ghost.

[Dùng Past Perfect cho sự việc khó có thể có ở quá khứ]

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai thì sau *if only* và *I wish* để diễn tả mong ước không thể thực hiện:

*If only I *have* a car! I'm tired of travelling by bus every day.

[Phải nói: If only I *had* a car...]

*I wish I *didn't try* to repair it yesterday. I only made it worse.

[Phải nói: I wish I *hadn't tried* to repair...]

- Dùng sai thì sau *as if/as though* để diễn tả sự việc khó có thể xảy ra:

*He walks as if he *has* a wooden leg. [Phải dùng *had*]

*He talks as if he *did* all the work himself, but in fact Tom and I did most of it.

[Phải dùng *had done*]

TEST 11.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

521. If only he _____ harder, he wouldn't have lost his job.

A. worked

B. would work

C. had worked

D. have worked

522. He always talks as though he _____ a public meeting.

A. addresses

B. addressed

C. were addressing

D. is addressing

523. He talks as if he _____ all the work himself, but in fact Tom and I did most of it.
 A. was doing B. had done
 C. did D. has done
524. If only we _____ a phone! I'm tired of queuing outside the public phone box.
 A. were B. had
 C. have D. are
525. If only we _____ more time, we could have seen more of the country.
 A. would have had B. have had
 C. had had D. had
526. I wish you _____ to me before you went and bought that car.
 A. spoke B. have spoken
 C. had spoken D. would have spoken
527. I wish I _____ that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him.
 A. had known B. know
 C. knew D. have known
528. I wish I _____ so much money when I was in town yesterday.
 A. wouldn't have spent B. hadn't spent
 C. wouldn't spend D. didn't spend
529. She treats us as if we _____ all idiots.
 A. are B. had been
 C. had been D. were
530. The cheese looks as if rats _____ it.
 A. nibbled B. were being nibbled
 C. had nibbled D. nibbling
531. Yesterday I met a very beautiful girl. I really want to see her again but I don't know how to go about it. I wish _____.
 A. I didn't meet her yesterday B. I had known her address
 C. I knew her address D. I will meet her tomorrow
532. You talk as though it _____ a small thing to leave your country forever.
 A. is B. were
 C. will be D. would be
533. Everybody feels sorry for him and says that "If only he _____ more time revising."
 A. should have spent B. would have spent
 C. had spent D. spent

534. He looks as though he _____ a square meal in his life, but in fact his wife feeds him very well.
 A. has never got B. never gets
 C. never got D. had never got
535. If only he _____ accept some help with the work instead of trying research.
 A. can B. may
 C. would D. were
536. If only he _____ told us the truth in the first place, things wouldn't have gone so wrong.
 A. had B. has
 C. would have D. should have
537. I wish I _____ to rewrite my essay. I only made it worse.
 A. I wouldn't have tried B. wouldn't try
 C. hadn't tried D. didn't tried
538. I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.
 A. can lend B. would lend
 C. could lend D. will lend
539. Last year the potato harvest was very disappointing, but this year it looks _____ we shall have a better crop.
 A. as though B. like that
 C. like D. to be that
540. That man has brought us nothing but trouble. I wish I _____ eyes in him.
 A. would have set B. had never set
 C. would have never set D. would never have set
541. When he is asked to say about it, it is clear that he knows nothing about their secret, but they treat him as if he _____ all about it.
 A. knew B. had known
 C. would know D. must know
542. I feel terrible. The heavy truck raced by me at full speed. I feel as if I _____ over.
 A. was run B. have been run
 C. had been run D. was being run
543. She speaks English as though it _____ her native language.
 A. is B. being
 C. were D. be

- fe 544. My sister says she can't come to the party with us. We wish she _____ her mind and _____ to come with us.
- A. will change / decide B. would change / decide
C. changed / decided D. had changed / decided
545. The cat turned her head toward John and looked at him quizzically, almost as if she _____ what he said.
- A. understands B. understood
C. had understood D. would understood
546. This evening the surface of the lake is completely still. It looks as if it _____ of glass.
- A. is made B. was made
C. were made D. has been made
547. Why didn't you tell me about this before? I certainly wish I _____ earlier.
- A. would be informed B. was informed
C. were informed D. had been informed
548. I know a farmer who talks to his animals as if they _____ people.
- A. are B. would be
C. were D. had been
- s 549. Anne is grown up now. You shouldn't speak to her as if she _____ a child.
- A. was B. were
C. had been D. would be
550. We became good friends almost immediately. After talking to each other for only a short time, we felt as if we _____ each other all of our lives.
- A. knew B. had known
C. know D. have known
- it,

12. PASSIVE SENTENCES

(Câu thụ động)

Trong câu chủ động, chủ ngữ làm chủ hành động được diễn tả bằng động từ. Ngược lại, trong câu thụ động, chủ ngữ nhận chịu hành động do một tác nhân nào đó gây nên. Do tiếng Anh sử dụng động từ ở nhiều thì rất khác nhau, người học cần nắm vững cách chia các động từ ở cả hình thức chủ động lẫn thụ động.

Tenses	Active	Passive
Simple Present	teaches	is taught
Present Continuous	is teaching	is being taught
Simple Past	taught	was taught
Past Continuous	was teaching	was being taught
Present Perfect	has taught	has been taught
Past Perfect	had taught	had been taught
Simple Future	will teach	will be taught
Future Continuous	will be teaching	will be being taught
Future Perfect	will have taught	will have been taught

Active Sentence Patterns	Examples of Passive Equivalents
1. SVO	<p>Many people heard the noise of the explosion.</p> <p>➔ <i>The noise of the explosion was heard by many people.</i></p>
2. SV that-clause	<p>The experts say that elephants have good memories.</p> <p>➔ <i>It is said by the experts that elephants have good memories.</i></p> <p>➔ <i>Elephants are said to have good memories.</i></p> <p>They reported that the enemy was crossing the frontier.</p> <p>➔ <i>It was reported that the enemy was crossing the frontier.</i></p> <p>➔ <i>The enemy was reported to be crossing the frontier.</i></p> <p>They believe that twenty people have been killed in the air crash.</p> <p>➔ <i>It is believed that twenty people have been killed in the air crash.</i></p> <p>➔ <i>Twenty people are believed to have been killed in the air crash.</i></p>

3. SVOto-inf	Police advise tourists to use another route. ➔ <i>Tourists are advised to use another route.</i>
4. SVObare inf	The policeman saw the robber put the jewellery in his bag. ➔ <i>The robber was seen to put the jewellery in his bag.</i>
5. SVOpres. part.	The policeman saw the robber putting the jewellery in his bag. ➔ <i>The robber was seen putting the jewellery in his bag.</i> The officials kept us waiting for two hours. ➔ <i>We were kept waiting for two hours.</i>
6. ShaveObare inf	I had the garage service my car. ➔ <i>I had my car serviced.</i>
7. SgetOto-inf	I got the garage to service my car. ➔ <i>I got my car serviced.</i>

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng cụm động từ ở dạng thụ động thiếu hoặc không đúng:

*They found a play that *might have written* by Shakespeare.

[Phải thêm *been*: *might have been written*]

*The letter *has been threw* away.

[Phải dùng *thrown* thay cho *threw*]

- Dùng cụm động từ ở dạng thụ động không phù hợp:

The wall measured two metres.

➔ *Two metres was measured by the wall.

[Không thể dùng ở dạng thụ động được.]

The library contains ten thousand books

➔ *Ten thousand books are contained by the library.

[Phải thay *by* bằng *in*: Ten thousand books are contained *in* the library.]

TEST 12.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

551. About 15,000 years ago, part of Northern America _____ under ice a mile deep.
A. was buried B. was burying
C. has been buried D. had buried
552. As the fairy tale goes, the prince _____ into a frog by an evil magician.
A. turned B. was turned
C. was turning D. had been turning
553. Both domestic and imported automobiles must _____ anti-pollution devices.
A. equipped with B. be equipped with
C. equipped by D. be equipped by
554. "Can't we do something about the situation?" – "Something _____ right now."
A. is doing B. is done
C. is being done D. has been doing
555. Despite all my anxiety, I _____ for the job I wanted.
A. was hiring B. hired
C. got hiring D. got hired
556. "Has _____ about the eight o'clock flight to Chicago?" – "Not yet."
A. been an announcement made B. an announcement been made
C. an announcement made D. been made an announcement
557. "Has the committee made its decision yet?" – "Not yet. They are still _____ the proposal."
A. considering B. been considered
C. being considered D. considered
558. How did that window _____ ?
A. get broken B. broke
C. got broken D. broken
559. I still can't believe it! My bicycle _____ last night.
A. was stolen B. was stealing
C. stolen D. stole
560. Today, many serious childhood diseases _____ by early immunization.
A. are preventing B. prevent
C. can prevent D. can be prevented

561. "When _____?" – "In 1928."
 A. penicillin was discovered B. did penicillin discovered
 C. was penicillin discovered D. did penicillin discover
562. "When can I have my car back?" – "I think it'll _____ late this afternoon."
 A. finish B. be finished
 C. have finished D. be finish
563. Last night a tornado swept through the village. _____ destroyed everything in its path.
 A. It B. It was
 C. It was being D. It had been
564. Let's go ahead and do it now. Nothing _____ by waiting.
 A. accomplishes B. accomplished
 C. has accomplished D. will be accomplished
565. Let's wait in the hallway where we'll be _____ the strong winds.
 A. protected by B. protecting from
 C. protecting by D. protected from
566. "Ms Jones, please type those letters before noon." – "They've _____ typed, sir. They're on your desk."
 A. already B. already been
 C. already being D. already been being
567. My car didn't start again. Fortunately, the mechanic _____ the source of the problem.
 A. was discover B. discovered
 C. was discovered D. has been discovered
568. On Friday afternoons, the highways _____ people on their way out of the city.
 A. are crowding by B. are crowded with
 C. are being crowded with D. crowd by
569. Renoir's paintings _____ masterpieces all over the world.
 A. had considered B. are considered
 C. are considering D. consider
570. Are you quite sure you know why _____?
 A. was he dismissed B. did he dismiss
 C. he was dismissing D. he was dismissed
571. "Come back at 5 o'clock," he said. "The job _____ by then."
 A. will be done B. has been done
 C. is being done D. was being done

572. He told us that many people _____ homeless by the fire last week.
 A. made B. having been made
 C. were made D. had made
573. It's hard to believe that my application for a scholarship _____.
 A. denied B. was denied
 C. was denying D. had denied
574. The bridge _____ finally, and now many hours of driving have been saved for commuters.
 A. constructed B. gets constructed
 C. was constructed D. has constructed
575. The child's arm was swollen because he _____ stung by a bee.
 A. is B. had
 C. had been D. had being
576. The current constitutional problem is _____ by the top leaders in the country.
 A. studying B. being studying
 C. being studied D. been studied
577. The hospital's air-conditioning system _____ when the first heat of the summer arrived.
 A. had installed B. had been installed
 C. installed D. had been installing
578. The man died because medical help was not summoned. A doctor should _____ called.
 A. be B. have
 C. been D. have been
579. The Mayan Indians _____ an accurate calendar more than seven centuries ago.
 A. were developed B. developed
 C. are developed D. have been developed
580. The rescuers _____ for their bravery and fortitude in locating the lost mountain climbers.
 A. praised B. praising
 C. were praised D. were praising

TEST 12.2

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

581. Vitamin C _____ by the human body. It gets into the blood stream quickly.
A. absorbed easily B. is easily absorbed
C. is easily absorbing D. was absorbed easily
582. "Are you interested in scuba diving?" – "Very. Undersea life is _____."
A. fascinated B. fascinating
C. being fascinating D. being fascinated
583. By the end of the century, it is likely that the oceans of the world _____ by all the rubbish poured into them.
A. will have been polluted B. will be polluting
C. are being polluted D. would have being polluted
584. The university _____ by private funds as well as by tuition income and grants.
A. is supported B. supports
C. is supporting D. has supported
585. When I passed the bridge this morning it _____.
A. was still repairing B. was still been repaired
C. was still being repaired D. has still being repaired
586. The Great Wall of China _____ by Chinese Emperors over 2500 years ago.
A. is built B. was built
C. has been built D. was being built
587. Spanish _____ by people in Latin America for nearly 600 years.
A. has been spoken B. has spoken
C. has being spoken D. was being spoken
588. How many cars _____ throughout the world in one year?
A. make and sell B. made and sold
C. are made and sold D. been made and sold
589. Everyone looked at the flag while the national anthem _____.
A. is sung B. is being sung
C. has been sung D. was being sung
590. According to a scientific estimate, thousands of species of plants and animals _____ each year due to the destruction of rain forests.
A. are lost B. were lost
C. being lost D. have being lost

591. Our air-conditioner doesn't work. It _____ before the hot weather comes.
 A. is fixed B. has to fix
 C. has to fixed D. has to be fixed
592. When the coach continued its journey, two members of the group _____ behind by mistake.
 A. left B. was left
 C. got left D. Both B and C are correct.
593. Frostbite may occur when the skin _____ to extreme cold, even in a short time.
 A. exposes B. is exposed
 C. being exposed D. is being exposed
594. Complaints about noise pollution _____ constantly over the last ten years.
 A. increased B. have increased
 C. have increasing D. have been increased
595. The pyramids in Egypt _____ by millions of tourists through the years.
 A. visited B. were visited
 C. have visited D. have been visited
596. The Amazon valley is extremely important to all of us. About 40% of the earth's oxygen _____ there.
 A. produce B. produced
 C. is produced D. is producing
597. Most of 250,000 kinds of flowers _____ only in the tropics, especially in south-east Asia.
 A. can be found B. can find
 C. can found D. can have found
598. Mrs Brown didn't want her son to go to the war because he _____.
 A. could be killed B. could have been killed
 C. must be killed D. must have been killed
599. In many countries, certain prices _____ by the government, such as the prices of medical supplies.
 A. controlled B. are controlled
 C. was controlled D. were controlled
600. The first fish appeared on the earth about 500 million years ago. Up to now, over 20,000 kinds of fish _____ by scientists.
 A. are named B. were named
 C. have been named D. had been named

601. Don't postpone things you need to do. Important work _____ until the last minute.
 A. can't be put off B. shouldn't be put off
 C. can't have been put off D. shouldn't have been put off
602. Today educational institutions _____ by private funds as well as by the tuition the students pay.
 A. are generally supported B. generally are supported
 C. generally supported D. supported generally
603. In the early 1980s, photographs of Mars _____ back to earth by unmanned space probes.
 A. were sent B. have been sent
 C. sent D. were being sent
604. According to our professor, all of our essays _____ carefully. He won't accept handwritten papers.
 A. are typed B. may be typed
 C. can be typed D. must be typed
605. Most of the committee members will be unable to attend the conference. In my opinion, it _____.
 A. could be postponed B. may be postponed
 C. might be postponed D. should be postponed
606. A network of lines called "canals" _____ on Mars' surface by an Italian astronomer around the turn of 20th century.
 A. is discovered B. was discovered
 C. has discovered D. has been discovered
607. Because zoos want to treat animals humanely and encourage breeding, animals _____ in large, natural settings instead of small cages.
 A. now put B. are now put
 C. have now put D. have now been put
608. At many high schools today, the students' grades _____ to their parents at least twice a year.
 A. sent B. was sent
 C. were sent D. are sent
609. People with the moral courage to fight against poverty and injustice _____ in every corner of the world.
 A. can be found B. can find
 C. could find D. must find
610. In the 1800s, millions of wild horses in North America _____ and _____ principally for use as pet food.
 A. hunted / killed B. were hunted / killed
 C. have hunted / killed D. have been hunted / killed

1
1
1
1
1
1
10
1
18
19
20

1

1

- 1

10. Look Jack, I've _____ your bad behaviour long enough!
A. put up B. put through
C. put up with D. get on well
11. It's a pity you can't join us. I wish you _____ work this weekend.
A. don't have to B. didn't have to
C. won't have to D. hadn't had to
12. She went _____ a bad cold just before Christmas.
A. down with B. in for
C. over D. through
13. It is not necessary that he _____ an entrance examination to be admitted to an American university.
A. take B. takes
C. must take D. be taking
14. As recently as last year, James _____ by an African government to advise on the restructuring of the civil service there.
A. asked B. has asked
C. was asked D. has been asked
15. Why is the girl over there looking at me as though she _____ me? I have never seen her before in my life!
A. knows B. knew
C. has known D. had known
16. The job offer was too good for him to turn _____.
A. down B. out
C. off D. away
17. The plane _____ down ten minutes late because of bad weather.
A. put B. flew
C. landed D. touched
18. Dogs usually wag their tails while they _____.
A. are patted B. are being patted
C. were patted D. were being patted
19. The *Roman Literature* _____ into one volume about the year 1240.
A. collected and condensed B. is collected and condensed
C. was collected and condensed D. has been collected and condensed
20. We expected him at eight but he finally _____ at midnight.
A. came to B. turned up
C. turned in D. came off

21. The teachers at the school went _____ with flu one after the other.
A. out B. down
C. off D. under
22. Let's wait in the hallway where we'll be _____ the strong winds.
A. protected by B. protecting from
C. protecting by D. protected from
23. When I met her last year, I felt as if I _____ her all my life.
A. have known B. know
C. had known D. had been knowing
24. John felt pretty upset and worried because of what Mary _____ about their marriage.
A. says B. said
C. has said D. had said
25. For safety reasons, large sums of money _____ in a bank.
A. ought kept B. ought keep
C. ought to be kept D. ought to kept
26. The doctor told him to keep _____ sweets and chocolate to lose weight.
A. at B. up
C. back D. off
27. John always talks a lot about Rome as though he _____ there himself.
A. was B. were
C. has been D. had been
28. There is just too much work to be done. We'll have to _____ some new employees.
A. get on B. take on
C. take off D. get off
29. After take-off, the chief pilot announced that all the food for the passengers _____ behind at the airport.
A. left B. has been left
C. have been left D. had been left
30. When the tenants failed to pay their bills, the authorities decided to cut _____ the gas supply to the flats.
A. out B. down
C. off D. across

PART B

Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct.

31. When you arrive at the bus terminal, take the number 7 bus and get down at
A B C D
Forest Road.
32. Since ancient times, farmers used scarecrows to protect their crops from
A B C D
hungry birds.
33. It is essential that vitamins are supplied either by foods or by supplementary
A B C
tablets for normal growth to occur.
D
34. Many architects prefer that a wall is built near the gate to conserve floor space.
A B C D
35. He said that censorship of news was ridiculous and it should be abolished
A B C D
years ago.
36. Are you going to make your daughter worked part time in the store this
A B C D
summer?
37. The seal, like the sea lion, is a descendent of ancestors that once live on the
A B C D
land.
38. I bet your friends were surprised when you told them the news. I wish I
A B C
could see their faces.
D
39. Futurologists study current trends to do predictions about the future.
A B C D
40. If only you told me you had tickets for the show. I'd have loved to go.
A B C D

41. The Award is grant every year to the authors of outstanding literature works.
A B C D
42. I suggest that he goes to the doctor as soon as he returns from the exam.
A B C D
43. He took to get up early in the morning and walking noisily about the house.
A B C D
44. Do you think that we can get Karen taken us to London tomorrow morning?
A B C D
45. My son keeps asking me to have his car fix before he goes to Canada.
A B C D
46. The National Basketball Association will not let any athlete to continue
A
playing in the league unless he submits voluntarily to treatment for drug addition.
B C D
47. In the late nineteenth century, many important theories in both the biological
A B C
and the physical sciences have been produced.
D
48. An electromagnet is creating by passing electric current through a coil of wire.
A B C D
49. Our guide recommended that we all are as attentive as possible when we
A B C
visit the observatory this afternoon.
D
50. Although many people find bats terrifying, they are actually beneficial
A B C
because they ate harmful insects.
D
51. This place has been preserve as a national historic monument because it was.
A B C
the site of a major battle in which many lives were lost.
D
52. The burglar went straight to the safe although it was hidden behind a picture.
A B
Someone should have told him where it was.
C D

53. The man who lives opposite us sometimes comes up for a cup of coffee.
A B C D
54. My classmate's handwriting is not as good as mine, so he had me typed his paper for him last night.
A B C D
55. The store manager caught the cashier stole money from the safe and promptly called the police.
A B C D
56. When scientists search a site for fossils, they begin by examining places where the soil has wore away from the rock.
A B C D
57. The Supreme Court has ruled that evidence obtained from illegal searches cannot use in court.
A B C D
58. The white pine is the most commercially important forest tree in North America until the beginning of the twentieth century.
A B C D
59. The director agreed to our proposal that an advertisement must be placed in the newspaper.
A B C D
60. In science, the results of an experiment are not generally accepted until they had been re-tested in other laboratories.
A B C D

13. COUNTABLE & UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

(Danh từ đếm được & không đếm được)

13.1 Danh từ đếm được có cả hình thức số ít và số nhiều: *book(s), house(s), dish(es), woman (women)*... Danh từ đếm được thường phải có *a, an* đi trước ở số ít hoặc ở số nhiều tận cùng bằng các hình thức số nhiều (*-s, -es*).

13.2 Danh từ không đếm được chỉ có hình thức số ít. Phần lớn các danh từ không đếm được là danh từ trừu tượng (*freedom, happiness, security...*) hoặc chỉ vật liệu (*sand, butter, oil...*). Danh từ không đếm được không có *a, an* đi trước và cũng không có hình thức số nhiều (*-s, -es*). Dưới đây là một số danh từ không đếm được thông dụng và danh từ đếm được có nghĩa hoặc cách dùng tương tự:

Nghĩa	Không đếm được	Đếm được
Chỗ ở	provided with free <i>accommodation</i>	staying at a <i>house/villa/apartment</i> ... looking for <i>accommodations</i> during a sport event (AmE)
Lời khuyên	need some <i>advice</i>	need a <i>piece of advice</i>
Tiền/tiền mặt	have some <i>money/cash</i>	have some <i>notes/coins</i>
Quần áo	take some <i>clothing</i>	buy four <i>items of clothing</i>
Miền quê	travel through the <i>countryside</i>	travel through a <i>bit of the countryside</i>
Dụng cụ	buy some <i>equipment</i>	buy a <i>piece of equipment</i>
Bằng chứng	find some <i>evidence</i>	find a <i>piece of evidence</i>
Sự vui vẻ	have some <i>fun</i>	have a <i>good time</i>
Bàn ghế	buy some <i>furniture</i>	buy some <i>pieces/items of furniture</i>
Bài tập (về nhà)	How much <i>homework</i> do you get?	How many <i>tasks/projects</i> do you get?
Công việc nhà	do <i>housework</i> all day long	do <i>chores</i> all day long
Đồ nữ trang	buy some <i>jewellery</i>	buy some <i>pieces of jewellery</i>
Đất đai	own some <i>land</i>	own a <i>piece of land</i>
Rác	drop <i>litter/rubbish</i>	drop a <i>piece of litter/rubbish</i>
(Sấm) Sét	struck by <i>lightning</i>	killed by a <i>flash of lightning</i>
Vận may	have some <i>good luck</i>	have a <i>piece/bit/stroke of luck</i>
Máy móc	install some <i>machinery</i>	install a <i>machine/ a piece of machinery</i>
Tin tức	read some <i>news</i>	read a <i>piece/an item of news</i>
Mưa	have some <i>rain</i>	have a <i>shower (of rain)</i>
Nghiên cứu	do <i>research</i>	do a <i>piece of research</i>
Xe cộ	see a lot of <i>traffic</i> on the road	see a <i>long queue/line of cars</i> on the road
Công việc	do some <i>work</i>	do a <i>job</i>
Phong cảnh	enjoy the <i>scenery</i>	enjoy a <i>rural scene</i>

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai *a, an* trước danh từ không đếm được:

*Can you give me an advice?

[Phải nói: Can you give me some advice?/ a piece of advice?]

- Không dùng *a, an* trước danh từ đếm được:

*Tiger is a wild animal.

[Phải nói: A *tiger* is a wild animal / *Tigers* are wild animals]

- Dùng số nhiều với danh từ không đếm được:

*I intend to buy some new equipments for the garage.

[Phải nói: I intend to buy some new *equipment* for the garage]

TEST 13.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

611. _____ in the morning is good for you.

A. Exercises

B. Exercise

C. Doing exercises

D. Both B & C are correct

612. How many _____ study English as a second language?

A. people

B. person

C. peoples

D. member

613. The boys went fishing and caught 10 _____.

A. fishes

B. fishing

C. fishs

D. fish

614. To many people, the _____ are a nuisance.

A. lice

B. louse

C. louses

D. lices

615. The _____ have been found to be effective.

A. stimuli

B. stimulus

C. stimulis

D. stimuluses

616. The _____ keep their _____ on the shelf.
 A. wives/ knives B. wife/ knife
 C. wives/knives D. wives/knives
617. The _____ surprise all of the scientists at the conference.
 A. phenomenons B. phenomenon
 C. phenomenal D. phenomena
618. The _____ were being led to the barn.
 A. oxen B. ox
 C. oxe D. oxes
619. The _____ were used to judge which proposals should be accepted.
 A. criterion B. criteria
 C. criterions D. criterias
620. The _____ were enthusiastically welcomed at the meeting.
 A. hero B. heroes
 C. heroess D. heros
621. The _____ were omitted in the passage.
 A. parentheses B. parenthesis
 C. parenthesisises D. parenthes
622. The _____ were hard to keep in the traps.
 A. mouses B. mouse
 C. mice D. mices
623. Those _____ have to be eliminated.
 A. mosquito B. mosquitos
 C. mosquitoes D. Both A & C are correct.
624. Where did the _____ hide the money? They must have put it somewhere around here.
 A. thief B. thieves
 C. thiefs D. thieve
625. Which breed of _____ produces the finest wool?
 A. sheep B. sheeps
 C. ships D. ship
626. _____ are allowed per passenger.
 A. Two luggages B. Two luggage
 C. Two pieces of luggage D. Two bursts of luggage

627. Because Sam and Michelle had done _____ themselves, they were unwilling to give the results to Joan.
 A. all of works B. all of the work
 C. many works D. a lot of works
628. _____ before her operation last month, Mrs. Carlyle dreamt of her daughter who lives overseas.
 A. A short time B. Short time
 C. The short time D. Some short times
629. I have come to perfect _____ of English.
 A. my knowledges B. my knowledge
 C. some of my knowledges D. some more knowledges
630. I have several jackets, but only _____.
 A. one trouser B. a pair of trouser
 C. one pair of trouser D. a pair of trousers
631. Daniel said that if he had to do _____ tonight, he would not be able to attend the concert.
 A. any more homework B. many homework
 C. such a lot of homeworks D. lots of homeworks
632. If you've been playing the piano for five years, learning to play the organ will be _____.
 A. a touch of cake B. a burst of cake
 C. a piece of cake D. a cake
633. _____ furniture will be delivered to one of our customers this morning.
 A. A piece of B. A slice of
 C. A flurry of D. A pile of
634. _____ was needed to build the sand castle.
 A. A bucket of sand B. A jar of sand
 C. Many sand D. A set of sand
635. _____ mail travels faster when the zip code is indicated on the envelope.
 A. A piece of B. An amount of
 C. A loaf of D. A slice of
636. _____ rain _____ expected tomorrow.
 A. A small number of / is B. A small number of / are
 C. A small amount of / is D. A small amount of / are
637. "Have you done _____ on this?" – "No, I haven't, but there was _____ that James did last year that might be relevant."
 A. a research / a burst of research B. some research / a touch of research
 C. any research / a flurry of research D. any research / a piece of research

638. Because they had spent _____ considering the new contract, the students lost the opportunity to lease the apartment.
- A. too many times
 - B. too much time
 - C. a lot of times
 - D. those time
639. The teachers and the administrators are having _____ agreeing on a contract for the forthcoming year that the teachers may go on strike.
- A. such a difficult time
 - B. such difficult time
 - C. much time
 - D. a lot of time
640. The teacher tried to make the classes _____ for the students so they would take _____ in the subject.
- A. enjoyable experience / a greater interest
 - B. the enjoyable experience / the greater interest.
 - C. enjoyable experiences / a greater interest
 - D. enjoyable experiences / much greater interest

14.

COMPOUND NOUNS

(Danh từ kép)

14.1 Cách thành lập: Danh từ kép thường gồm hai từ kết hợp với nhau, trong đó từ đi trước được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho từ đi sau. Từ đi sau thường là từ chính. Phần lớn danh từ kép được tạo thành bởi:

- *Danh từ + danh từ:*

a tennis club (câu lạc bộ quần vợt) a phone bill (hóa đơn điện thoại)
a train journey (chuyến đi bằng tàu lửa) a lawn-mower (máy cắt cỏ)

- *Danh động từ + danh từ:*

a swimming-pool (hồ bơi) a dining-room (phòng ăn)
washing powder (bột giặt) a sleeping bag (túi ngủ)

- *Tính từ + danh từ:*

a green house (nhà kính) a black sheep (kẻ hư hỏng)
a blackboard (bảng viết) quicksilver (thủy ngân)

Một số ít danh từ kép có thể gồm ba từ hoặc nhiều hơn: merry-go-round (trò chơi ngựa quay), forget-me-not (hoa lưu li), mother-in-law (bà gia) ...

14.2 Trật tự của từ trong danh từ kép rất quan trọng. Chú ý sự khác nhau do vị trí của từ chính:

leather shoe (giày da)	nhưng	shoe leather (da để làm giày)
flower paper (giấy hoa)	nhưng	paper flower (hoa làm bằng giấy)

14.3 Cách viết danh từ kép: Danh từ kép có thể được viết như:

- Hai từ rời: address book, taxi driver
- Hai từ có gạch nối ở giữa: waste-bin, living-room
- Một từ duy nhất: blackboard, website

Chú ý trong cấu tạo *danh từ + danh từ*, danh từ đi trước thường có hình thức số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy trường hợp:

a vegetable garden (vườn rau)	an eye test (kiểm tra mắt)
a sports shop (cửa hàng bán đồ thể thao)	a goods train (tàu chở hàng)

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai vị trí của từ chính và từ phụ khiến nghĩa bị thay đổi:

*Oil whale lamps were replaced by kerosene lamps in 1860.

[Phải dùng *whale oil* thay vì *oil whale* để chỉ *dầu cá voi*]

- Viết sai chính tả vì bị ảnh hưởng bởi mạo từ số ít đi trước:

*a sale office, *an arm dealer, *a clothe brush, *a custom regulation

[Phải viết *a sales office, an arms dealer, a clothes brush, a customs regulation*]

- Dùng nhầm từ này với nghĩa kia:

*John bought two milk bottles for his children every morning.

[Phải nói: "bottles of milk" (chai sữa) thay cho "milk bottles" (chai dùng để đựng sữa)]

*This factory makes bottles of milk for dairy farms.

[Phải nói: "milk bottles" (chai dùng để đựng sữa) thay cho "bottles of milk"]

Tương tự với: a wine glass/a glass of wine; a jam jar/a jar of jam; a tea pot/a pot of tea...

TEST 14.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

641. A rod made of carbon steel is called _____.
A. carbon steel rod B. rod carbon steel
C. steel rod carbon D. steeling carbon
642. A _____ is a coat that is worn when it is raining.
A. coat raining B. raining coat
C. raincoat D. coating rain
643. _____ is a mechanical device that operates by using gasoline as a fuel.
A. Gasoline engine B. Gasoline machine
C. Mechanical gasoline D. Fuel machine

644. He gave her a _____ on the wedding party.
A. gold ring B. golden ring
C. gold ringing D. ringing gold
645. A rod of wood or steel which is used with a line for catching fish is called a _____.
A. fishing rod B. fish rod
C. rod fish D. rod fishing
646. Every day thousands of _____ fly the Atlantic for negotiations with American firms.
A. vendors B. dealers
C. tradesmen D. businessmen
647. Harrods, in London, is probably one of the best-known _____ in the world.
A. departmental stores B. department stores
C. department shops D. departmental shops
648. We added a _____ to our playground.
A. flashing light B. lighting flash
C. flashlight D. light flash
649. In the old days, orphans and homeless people lived and worked in _____.
A. work home B. workhouses
C. warehouses D. workshops
650. It is a good idea to see your doctor regularly for _____.
A. a revision B. a control
C. an investigation D. a check-up
651. _____ is a discomfort experienced by women early in pregnancy.
A. Morning sickness B. Morning sick
C. Sick in the morning D. Sickness morning
652. _____ is an indicator that shows a battery charge.
A. Charge battery indicator B. Battery charge indicator
C. Indicator charge battery D. Indicator charging battery
653. A system for purification of water is called _____.
A. a purification water system B. a water purification system
C. a system water purification D. a purified water system
654. John usually has enough time to read a few _____ in the morning.
A. newspaper articles B. article newspapers
C. newspaper units D. units newspapers

655. Knives that people carry in their pockets are called _____.
 A. knife pockets B. knives pockets
 C. pocket knives D. pockets knives
656. Many kinds of animals have been forgotten in the _____.
 A. econo-system B. eco-system
 C. echo-system D. ecolo-system
657. A device whose purpose is to remove dirt and other particles from incoming air is called a(n) _____.
 A. air filter B. air filtering
 C. filter air D. airing filter
658. Some old friends of mine are coming for _____ this Sunday.
 A. a getting-together B. a get-together
 C. a together-getting D. getting together
659. The fountain pen is not as popular as the _____.
 A. point ball B. ballpoint
 C. ball of the point D. point of ball
660. The _____ is an industry concerned with the manufacture and marketing of paper.
 A. industry paper B. paper industry
 C. industrial paper D. manufacture paper
661. The place where animals are protected within their natural environment is called a(n) _____.
 A. wild-life preservation B. wile-life reserve
 C. animal reserve D. wild-life protection
662. We have a day off tomorrow. Let's make a _____ tour.
 A. sightsee B. sightseeing
 C. see sight D. see sighting
663. We used to play _____ in the garden.
 A. hide-see B. seek-hide
 C. hide-and-see D. hide-seeking
664. Why don't you buy a _____? It will help you do the washing.
 A. dishwasher B. sewing machine
 C. washing machine D. vacuum cleaner
665. I am the _____ of the newspaper of the school.
 A. chief-in-editor B. editor-chief in
 C. in-chief editor D. editor-in-chief

666. A person who enjoys watching football matches and supporting a football team is _____.

A. a football star

B. a football watcher

C. a football fan

D. a football player

667. My son-in-law brought me _____.

A. a pair of tennis shoes

B. a shoe pair of tennis

C. a pair of shoes tennis

D. a pair of shoe of tennis

668. The _____ was broken after a herd of cows ran through it.

A. house dog

B. doghouse

C. house's dog

D. dog's house

669. At the zoo, the Indian elephant was examined by the zoo _____.

A. veterinary surgeon

B. medical keeper

C. medical guard

D. animal doctor

670. Washing dishes is rather boring. I'm going to buy a _____.

A. washer

B. dishwasher

C. washstand

D. washing machine

15. THE ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

(Trật tự của tính từ)

15.1 Vị trí của tính từ: Tính từ thường có các vị trí:

- (i) trước danh từ (attributive): an *old* apartment, a *sandy* beach, a *beautiful* view
- (ii) sau động từ nối (predicative):

The meeting seemed very *noisy*.

Little John was *asleep*.

Hầu hết các tính từ đều có thể dùng ở cả hai vị trí (a *noisy* meeting/the meeting is *noisy*) nhưng một số tính từ chỉ xuất hiện trước danh từ trong khi một số khác chỉ xuất hiện sau động từ nối (be, seem, look...).

a) Tính từ chỉ đi trước danh từ (attributive only):

Những tính từ này gồm có: *chief, elder, eldest, former, indoor, inner, main, only, outdoor, outer, principal, sheer (= complete), sole (= only), upper, utter (= complete)*.

The *chief* problem is the shortage of oil.

We walked for hours in *utter* darkness.

b) Tính từ chỉ đi sau động từ nối (predicative only):

Những tính từ này gồm có: *fine, well, ill, ashamed, glad, pleased, upset* và các tính từ có tiếp tố a-: *afraid, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake*:

The victim is still *alive*.

He was *pleased* to hear that he had been promoted.

c) Trường hợp khác:

Ngoài hai vị trí trên đây, tính từ có thể đi sau danh từ khi chúng được theo sau bởi các cụm giới từ (full of, tired of...) hoặc có các đại từ bất định (something, anything ...) đi trước:

He found a box *full of precious* stones.

Many people *anxious for* news are waiting at the gate.

Let's find somewhere *quiet*.

There is nothing *new*.

Một số tính từ khi đi trước hoặc đi sau danh từ có nghĩa khác nhau:

The person *concerned* is ill today. (= liên quan)

A number of *concerned* people have joined the meeting. (= quan tâm)
 The police will contact the people *involved*. (= liên quan)
 It's a rather *involved* story. (= phức tạp)
 There are not many people *present* at the meeting. (= hiện diện)
 The *present* situation requires prompt action. (= hiện nay)
 He has a *responsible* attitude to work. (= có thể tin cậy)
 The person *responsible* for the project has been fired. (= có trách nhiệm)

15.2 Trật tự của tính từ: Khi có nhiều tính từ cùng phẩm định cho một danh từ, tính từ thuộc nhóm 1 đứng ở vị trí đầu tiên (xa danh từ nhất), tính từ thuộc nhóm 7 ở vị trí gần danh từ nhất.

- 1) Tính từ chỉ số thứ tự và số đếm: *first, second..., three, five*
- 2) Tính từ chỉ phẩm chất và kích cỡ: *ugly, nice, wonderful, large, small, tall...*
- 3) Tính từ chỉ hình dáng: *round, square, fat, narrow...*
- 4) Tính từ chỉ màu sắc: *green, blue, black...*
- 5) Tính từ chỉ quốc tịch: *Japanese, Chinese, American ...*
- 6) Tính từ hoặc danh từ chỉ vật liệu: *wooden, brick, paper...*
- 7) Danh từ được dùng như tính từ: *tennis, pocket, picture...*

two large white pocket handkerchiefs (số đếm + kích cỡ + màu sắc)
 a small square room (kích cỡ + hình dáng)
 two beautiful gold rings (số đếm + phẩm chất + vật liệu)
 the first two happy little boys (thứ tự + số đếm + phẩm chất + kích cỡ)

Khi có nhiều tính từ thuộc cùng một nhóm, chúng ta dùng dấu phẩy (,) để tách ra và đặt tính từ ngắn hơn đi trước.

a soft, comfortable chair
 a bright, cheerful smile

Khi hai tính từ có độ dài tương đương, tính từ nào đi trước cũng được:

a peaceful, happy place hoặc a happy, peaceful place
 a dirty, narrow street hoặc a narrow, dirty street

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai tính từ :

*She carried an *asleep* boy in her arms.

[Phải viết: She carried a *sleeping* boy in her arms]

*We take care of all the *ill* people.

[Phải viết: We take care of all the *sick* people]

- Dùng sai vị trí (đối với một vài tính từ):

*The new president shook hands with all the present members at the meeting.

[Phải viết "... with all the members present ..." thay cho "... with all the present members"]

- Dùng sai trật tự từ :

*We saw a silk blue beautiful handkerchief on her chair.

[Phải viết "... saw a beautiful blue silk handkerchief on her chair"]

TEST 15.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

671. The _____ sat down on the chair waiting for his turn.

A. pleased customer

B. customer pleasing

C. satisfied customer

D. customer satisfied

672. He is a really _____ person. He talks all the time but he never says anything interesting.

A. bored

B. boring

C. fed up

D. annoyed

673. He is a very _____ man. He always thinks about himself.

A. selfish

B. self-confident

C. self-important

D. self-possessed

674. He is not very _____ of criticism.
 A. tolerated B. tolerable
 C. tolerant D. tolerate
675. He is _____. He doesn't have any friends.
 A. lonely B. alone
 C. unique D. sole
676. It is very _____ to drive a bus.
 A. excited B. exciting
 C. excite D. excitedly
677. It was a very _____ story. I laughed from beginning to end.
 A. amused B. interesting
 C. amusing D. interested
678. One condition of this job is that you must be _____ to work at the weekend.
 A. available B. capable
 C. acceptable D. accessible
679. The example you gave is hardly _____ to our situation.
 A. accustomed B. entitled
 C. valid D. applicable
680. The microphone enabled them to keep in touch. It made it _____ for them to keep in touch.
 A. able B. capable
 C. possible D. probable
681. The _____ thing about traveling by train rather than by car is that you can sleep or read during the journey.
 A. enjoyment B. enjoyed
 C. enjoying D. enjoyable
682. The young woman was holding _____ in her arms.
 A. a sleeping child B. a child sleeps
 C. an asleep child D. a child asleep
683. Some _____ round the museum were in the café.
 A. visitors tired of looking B. tired of looking visitors
 C. tired visitors of looking D. tired looking visitors
684. My boss is a _____ legend in the business world.
 A. live B. living
 C. alive D. lived

685. I don't go out at night because I am _____ that someone will rob me.
 A. frightened B. frightening
 C. thrilling D. thrilled
686. The _____ ran into a hole at the back of the kitchen.
 A. afraid dog B. dog afraid
 C. dog frightened D. frightened dog
687. My wife bought a _____ towel at the supermarket yesterday.
 A. large green bath B. green large bath
 C. bath green large D. bath large green
688. Where have you been all day? We have been so _____ about you.
 A. worrying B. worried
 C. annoying D. boring
689. You are a very _____ person; I never thought you would do anything like that.
 A. amazed B. surprising
 C. terrified D. horrified
690. The company manager is a _____ man today.
 A. glad B. happy
 C. pleased D. content
691. It is a new clock but it does not always keep _____ time.
 A. certain B. true
 C. accurate D. serious
692. We need four _____ for our house.
 A. new stylish aluminum garden chairs
 B. new aluminum stylish garden chairs
 C. stylish aluminum new garden chairs
 D. aluminum stylish new garden chairs
693. Their financial situation is very _____. They spend more and more, but they are earning less and less.
 A. frightening B. threatened
 C. terrified D. confused
694. There was a plan to build a canal, but the company _____ has gone bankrupt.
 A. interested B. related
 C. associated D. concerned
695. The _____ hat is typical in many 18th century films.
 A. traditional American cowboy B. American traditional cowboy
 C. American cowboy traditional D. traditional cowboy American

696. The newspaper says that the _____ were sent to prison.
A. two guilty men of robbery B. two men guilty of robbery
C. two guilty of robbery men D. two guilty robbery men
697. The look on his face when he attacked me was absolutely _____! I'll never forget it.
A. scaring B. petrifying
C. fearing D. afraid
698. The tourist guide says that _____ shouldn't climb the tower.
A. nervous of heights people B. nervous people of heights
C. people nervous of heights D. people of nervous heights
699. It is obvious that _____ employees work better than sick ones.
A. fine B. well
C. healthy D. Both B & C are correct.
700. There are two _____ products in the competition.
A. similar B. alike
C. same D. like

16. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

(*Tính từ kép*)

16.1 Cách viết: Tính từ kép thường gồm hai (hoặc nhiều) từ kết hợp với nhau và được dùng như một từ duy nhất. Tính từ kép có thể được viết:

- **thành một từ duy nhất:**

life + long = lifelong (*cả đời*)

home + sick = homesick (*nhớ nhà*)

- **thành hai từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:**

heart + broken = heart-broken (*đau khổ*)

fast + growing = fast-growing (*phát triển nhanh*)

16.2 Cấu tạo: Tính từ kép có thể được tạo thành bởi:

- **Danh từ + tính từ:**

nation-wide (*khắp nước*)

noteworthy (*đáng chú ý*)

duty-free (*miễn thuế*)

blood-thirsty (*khát máu*)

- **Danh từ + phân từ:**

time-consuming (*tốn thời gian*)

handmade (*làm bằng tay*)

breath-taking (*đáng kinh ngạc*)

heart-broken (*đau khổ*)

- **Phó từ + phân từ:**

outspoken (*thẳng thắn*)

ill-equipped (*trang bị tồi*)

high-sounding (*huênh hoang*)

well-behaved (*lễ phép*)

- **Tính từ + phân từ:**

beautiful-sounding (*nghe hay*)

good-looking (*xinh xắn*)

easy-going (*thoải mái*)

middle-ranking (*bậc trung*)

- **Tính từ + danh từ kết hợp với -ed**

old-fashioned (*lỗi thời*)

fair-skinned (*da trắng*)

absent-minded (*đãng trí*)

artistic-minded (*có óc thẩm mỹ*)

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai cấu tạo từ:

*a nicely-looking jacket

[Phải dùng *a nice-looking jacket* (tính từ + phân từ)]

*a new-married couple

[Phải dùng *a newly-married couple* (phó từ + phân từ)]

- Viết sai hình thức so sánh bậc hơn và bậc nhất (comparative & superlative forms):

*older-fashioned, *oldest-fashioned

[Phải viết *more old-fashioned, most old-fashioned*]

*better-to-do, *best-to-do

[Phải viết *more well-to-do, most well-to-do*]

17. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

(Tính từ dùng như danh từ)

17.1 **Tính chất:** Tính từ và phân từ được dùng như danh từ có các đặc điểm sau:

- (i) Dùng để chỉ một khái niệm hoặc tập hợp người
- (ii) Thường có *the* đứng trước:

the good (cái thiện)
the beautiful (cái đẹp)
the blind (những người mù)
the rich (những người giàu)
the homeless (những người không nhà)
the privileged (những người có đặc quyền)
the handicapped (những người tàn tật)
the unemployed (những người thất nghiệp)

The rich do not know how *the poor* live.

There was a terrible accident last night. There were many *dead* and over 20 *injured*.

He is a lover of *the beautiful*.

The injured were taken to hospital.

17.2 **Cách dùng:** Các tính từ như trên phải dùng kèm với *the*, trừ khi chúng có các tính từ như *many, more*, các liên từ như *and, or*, các từ sở hữu như *my, your* đi trước.

Today there are more opportunities for *both rich and poor*.

Các tính từ dùng như danh từ có thể được phẩm định bởi phó từ:

the mentally ill	the very rich
the severely disabled	the partially sighted

TEST 17.1

Hãy thay các cụm từ được in nghiêng trong các câu bằng các tính từ được dùng làm danh từ sau đây:

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| a. the blind | b. the impossible | c. the unexplained | d. the unexpected |
| e. The old | f. the homeless | g. The rich/the poor | h. the old/the young |
| i. the injured | j. The unemployed | | |

701. *Those out of work* receive regular welfare benefits from the government.
702. *People who are old* are greatly respected in many countries in the world.
703. We can do many things, but we can't do *what isn't possible*.
704. Are there special schools for *people who can't see*?
705. Why are so many people interested in *things that can't be explained*?
706. What can be done for *people who have nowhere to live*?
707. A good rule in life is always to prepare for *what you don't expect*.
708. *Rich people* are often less generous with their money than *poor people*.
709. There are more churchgoers among *old people* than *young people*.
710. After the accident, *those who were injured* were quickly taken to hospital.

18. ADJECTIVES + PREPOSITIONS

(Tính từ + giới từ)

18.1 Các tính từ trong tiếng Anh là thành phần của vị ngữ (predicate) thường liên kết với một giới từ nào đó:

The ancient pagoda was *crowded with* tourists.

The audience was *impressed by/with* the artist's performance.

He was found *guilty of* burglary.

This house is *similar to* the one we have just visited.

Children are often *afraid of* going out in the dark.

Many foreign tourists are *fond of* the local seafood.

Mary is *fed up with* doing the same things day after day.

John's parents are *pleased with* his exam results.

I am *nervous of* saying the wrong thing.

What's *wrong with* borrowing a little money?

The hotel is *famous for* its huge casino.

I'm afraid I'll be rather *short of* money this month.

Many young people were *crazy about* country music.

We are *proud of* his achievements.

He was *surprised at* what happened that night.

My sister is always *worried about* her weight.

He is *thrilled at/by* the prospect of seeing her again.

That kind of remark is *typical of* a man.

My little son is *brilliant at* maths, you know.

I am always *bad at* any kind of sport.

It is said that English people are *hopeless at* learning foreign languages.

Many people are often *jealous of* other people's success.

Nhiều động từ đi sau các giới từ trên đây có thể có chủ ngữ:

She was aware of *people* staring at her new dress.

We are surprised at *Linda* failing the exam.

18.2 Một số tính từ có thể liên kết với hai giới từ khác nhau tùy theo nghĩa:

The passengers are *angry about* the delay. [angry about something]

Why are you *angry with* me? It's not my fault. [angry with someone]

Everyone was *anxious about* terrorist attacks. [anxious about something]

Parents are usually *anxious for* their children. [anxious for someone]

The new graduates are *anxious for* work. [= wanting]

The government is deeply *concerned about* the strike. [worried about]

My research is *concerned with* social trends. [= about, interested in]

I've kept you waiting. *Sorry about* that. [Sorry about something]

I'm *sorry for* keeping you waiting. [Sorry for doing something]

Regular exercise is *good for* everyone. [benefit everyone]

Thank you. You've been very *good to* me. [treat me well]

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai giới từ theo sau vì bị ảnh hưởng bởi sự giao thoa ngôn ngữ:

*Her teaching method is *similar with* that of most other teachers.

[Phải dùng *similar to*]

*He soon gets *accustomed with* the new schedule.

[Phải dùng *accustomed to*]

- Dùng sai giới từ vì không phân biệt được sự khác nhau của (cụm) danh từ theo sau:

*In order to get a job, you need to apply for a company.

[Phải dùng *apply to*: to apply to sb for sth]

TEST 18.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

711. He was bitterly ashamed _____ her for doing such things.

A. for

B. by

C. in

D. of

712. Admission to the Lion Club is open _____ people under 30 only.
 A. with B. for
 C. to D. by
713. Contrary _____ what most people used to believe, these minerals are not renewable.
 A. with B. for
 C. against D. to
714. Don't you get tired _____ watching that TV programme every night?
 A. with B. by
 C. of D. at
715. Don't be afraid _____ the dog. He is quite harmless.
 A. in B. of
 C. at D. for
716. My little son was interested _____ fixing broken objects and making new things.
 A. on B. at
 C. with D. in
717. His solution to the math problem is similar _____ many of his colleagues.
 A. with B. as
 C. for D. to
718. Is the government capable _____ finding a solution to the unemployment among school-leavers?
 A. of B. to
 C. for D. at
719. It was very good _____ you to help Sue with her homework.
 A. for B. to
 C. with D. of
720. Many young people want to be independent _____ their parents.
 A. of B. from
 C. with D. against
721. Now the senator is no longer as indifferent _____ criticism as he used to be.
 A. against B. to
 C. towards D. with
722. Since all vehicles were banned from the city centre, the air has been safe _____ pollution.
 A. about B. apart from
 C. from D. again

723. Seven o'clock will be convenient _____ me to come to your birthday party.
A. for B. to
C. with D. of
724. The chemical that his company is producing is dangerous _____ human.
A. to B. for
C. with D. against
725. The public are very concerned _____ the increasing crime rates in the city.
A. with B. at
C. about D. for
726. The students are bored _____ learning the same subjects this semester.
A. of B. at
C. in D. with
727. The scientists are well aware _____ the seriousness of environmental pollution.
A. about B. of
C. with D. for
728. We must hurry, otherwise we should be late _____ school.
A. for B. to
C. from D. on
729. We were lucky to be able to finish the project ahead _____ schedule.
A. for B. of
C. before D. by
730. The buildings in this city are typical _____ Chinese architectural styles.
A. of B. for
C. with D. about
731. You'd better not approach him, he is concerned _____ a difficult problem that needs all his attention.
A. about B. on
C. for D. with
732. Contrary _____ my expectation, they didn't feel uneasy _____ the result of the match.
A. to / with B. for / at
C. on / for D. to / about
733. Wearing long hair and colorful clothes was very popular _____ young people of the 1970s.
A. for B. to
C. by D. with

734. Mike was absorbed _____ his work and didn't notice me coming.
A. with B. in
C. at D. by
735. During Christmas season, many streets are crowded _____ festival-goers.
A. with B. by
C. about D. of
736. I felt sorry _____ those people whose flights were delayed for so long.
A. at B. with
C. for D. to
737. The investors in the company were angry _____ losing their money.
A. for B. about
C. with D. of
738. The children who came from the nearby school were very friendly _____ the villagers.
A. with B. to
C. about D. toward
739. The island we visited this morning is famous _____ its standing stones.
A. about B. with
C. of D. for
740. The school children are fed up _____ doing the same things day after day.
A. for B. of
C. with D. about

19. THE POSITION OF ADVERBS

(Vị trí của phó từ)

19.1 Vị trí: Phó từ trong tiếng Anh có nhiều vị trí khác nhau: đầu câu, giữa câu hoặc cuối câu.

a) Đầu câu (front position): là vị trí của các phó từ và cụm phó từ được dùng để phẩm định cả câu.

Sure enough, there was an enormous queue at the booking office.

After a while I got used to the dark.

Naturally, we all hope for good news.

Certainly this is a good chance for everyone.

I left the bike unlocked. *Luckily* it was still there when I got back.

b) Giữa câu (mid-position): Các phó từ tần suất (always, sometimes, never...) và một vài phó từ chỉ mức độ (slightly, completely, quite...) thường được đặt trước động từ chính.

They *always* deal with the mail first.

We *hardly* ever go out in the evenings.

His remarks could have *completely* spoiled everything.

We *quite* agree with what you said.

c) Cuối câu (end position): Các phó từ chỉ thời gian (tomorrow, next year...), thể cách (hastily, slowly...) và nơi chốn (there, at home...) thường được đặt sau động từ chính hoặc ở cuối câu.

We planned to finish the project *next month*.

I can find my way around *easily*.

The sun still shone *brightly* in the quiet garden.

There has been another shooting incident *at an American school*.

Các phó từ chỉ thể cách (tận cùng bằng -ly) thường có thể được đặt ở cả ba vị trí trên đây:

Naturally, we all hope for good news.

We all *naturally* hope for good news.

We all hope for good news, *naturally*.

19.2 Các trường hợp riêng: Vị trí của phó từ có thể thay đổi khi:

a) Người nói cần nhấn mạnh ý nghĩa do phó từ đó diễn tả. Đây là trường hợp của các phó từ chỉ tần suất (thường có vị trí giữa câu), nơi chốn và thể cách (thường ở cuối câu). Khi được nhấn mạnh, phó từ thường được đặt ở đầu câu:

I *usually* stay at home in the evening. *Sometimes* I go to a movie.

[Chú ý sự tương phản giữa *usually* và *sometimes*]

It was warm and comfortable *in the house*. *Outside*, it was getting dark.

[Chú ý sự tương phản giữa *in the house* và *outside*]

Every day he talks about the girl; *every night* he dreams of her.

[Chú ý *Every day* sánh đôi với *every night*]

Slowly the sun sank into the sea.

[Nhấn mạnh *slowly*]

- b) Người nói hoặc tình huống cần xác định phó từ đó phẩm định từ nào trong câu. Cần chú ý phó từ phải đứng gần từ nó muốn phẩm định:

They agreed *immediately* that the machine would be repaired.

[*immediately* phẩm định *agreed*]

They agreed that the machine would be repaired *immediately*.

[*immediately* phẩm định *repaired*]

19.3 Khi có nhiều phó từ được đặt ở cuối câu, trật tự của chúng như sau:

- a) **Luật PMFT** (áp dụng khi các phó từ chỉ nơi chốn chỉ phương hướng đến một nơi nào đó (to school) hoặc là các phó từ như *here, there, home...*)

	Pt chỉ nơi chốn (P)	Pt chỉ thể cách (M)	Pt chỉ tần suất (F)	Pt chỉ thời gian (T)
He went	to school	by car		this morning.
She walked	to the club		every morning	last week.
I'll meet you	here	with a car		tonight.

- b) **Luật MPT** (áp dụng trong các trường hợp còn lại)

	Pt chỉ thể cách (M)	Pt chỉ nơi chốn (P)	Pt chỉ thời gian (T)
John waited	impatiently	outside the garage	yesterday.
She sang	perfectly	in the town hall	last night.
My friend spoke to us	very rudely	in class	this morning.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- **Đặt sai vị trí của phó từ chỉ thời gian** (ở đầu câu) do ảnh hưởng của tiếng Việt:

**Last night* I watched an interesting film on television.

[Nên nói: I watched *last night*]

- **Đặt phó từ giữa động từ và tân ngữ:**

*He wrapped *carefully* the package.

[Nên nói: He wrapped the package *carefully*. Chỉ đặt phó từ giữa động từ và tân ngữ khi đó là tân ngữ dài: "He wrapped *carefully* all the glasses and ornaments" hoặc đặt trước động từ chính: "He *carefully* wrapped all the glasses and ornaments"]

TEST 19.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

741. Because of its warm tropical climate, Hawaii _____ subzero temperatures.
 A. almost experiences never B. experiences never almost
 C. experiences almost never D. almost never experiences
742. Edward _____ goes to bed before midnight.
 A. hardly ever B. seldom never
 C. almost ever D. hardly never
743. Electrical disturbances on Earth _____ by storms on the surface of the sun.
 A. are caused frequently B. frequently are caused
 C. are frequently caused D. are frequent causes
744. We _____ in case there is a lot of traffic.
 A. had better early start B. had early better start
 C. had better start early D. early had better start

745. Fast food restaurants have become popular because many working people want

- _____.
- A. to eat quickly and cheaply
 - B. quickly eating and cheaply
 - C. to quickly and cheaply eating
 - D. eating quickly and cheaply

746. He _____ that he got a speeding ticket.

- A. was so fastly driving
- B. was driving so fast
- C. was driving too fastly
- D. was very fast driving

747. She wishes _____.

- A. that they hadn't sent her the candy because she's on a diet yesterday
- B. that they hadn't sent her the candy yesterday because she's on a diet
- C. yesterday that they hadn't sent her the candy because she's on a diet
- D. that yesterday they hadn't sent her the candy because she's on a diet

748. He _____ for himself.

- A. extremely set difficult standards
- B. set extremely difficult standards
- C. set difficult extremely standards
- D. extremely difficult set standards

749. He _____ so that the students could understand.

- A. repeated the question slowly
- B. the question slowly repeated
- C. repeated slowly the question
- D. repeated the slowly question

750. He was a dedicated teacher; and _____ to teach the highest class.

- A. was consequently promoting
- B. consequently, was promoted
- C. was promoted consequently
- D. Both A & C are correct.

751. _____ in making her answer the question.

- A. Eventually he succeeded
- B. He eventually succeeded
- C. Eventually he succeeding
- D. Both A & B are correct.

752. My friend Bill _____.

- A. has helped me always with my work
- B. has always helped me with my work
- C. always has helped me with my work
- D. Both B & C are correct.

753. I remember receiving the letter a few days ago but I _____.

- A. can't remember exactly when
- B. exactly can't remember when
- C. when exactly can't remember
- D. exactly when can't remember

754. Not only do trees provide shade and beauty, but _____ carbon dioxide.

- A. also they reduce
- B. they also reduce
- C. reduce also
- D. also reducing

- t
755. People _____ for two basic purposes – warmth and decoration.
A. wear usually clothing B. clothing usually wear
C. clothing usually wearing D. usually wear clothing
756. She had changed so much that _____ her.
A. hardly anyone recognized B. almost anyone hardly recognized
C. anyone hardly recognized D. Both A & C are correct.
757. Sometimes _____ his wife had to remind him to sleep and eat.
A. he worked intensely so that B. he worked so intensely that
C. intensely he worked so that D. he intensely worked so that
758. The new equipment _____ from the old, and performed a lot better.
A. was different discernibly B. was discernibly different
C. discernibly was different D. was differently discernible
759. _____ the origin of the defined word, state its part of speech, and indicate its correct use.
A. Frequently dictionaries explain
B. Dictionaries frequently explain
C. Explaining the frequently dictionaries
D. The explaining frequently dictionaries
760. _____ to fill up with petrol, so she didn't run out on the way there.
A. She remembered luckily B. Luckily, she remembered
C. She luckily remembered D. Luckily she remembered
761. The scientist _____.
A. was studying all the sources of information he had found closely
B. was studying closely all the sources of information he had found
C. was closely studying all the sources of information he had found
D. Both B & C are correct.
762. The instrument could _____.
A. measure accurately the exact position of the ship that had sunk off the coast
B. measure the exact position of the ship that had sunk off the coast accurately
C. measure the exact position of the ship that had accurately sunk off the coast
D. measure the exact position of the ship that had sunk accurately off the coast
763. _____ his new girlfriend very much.
A. Frankly, I don't like B. I frankly don't like
C. I don't frankly like D. I don't like frankly
764. Janet is very busy this week. She _____.
A. won't attend the party probably B. won't probably attend the party
C. probably won't attend the party D. Both B & C are correct.

765. Some of the assignments are so difficult that we _____.
A. haven't always finished them on time
B. always haven't finished them on time
C. haven't finished them always on time
D. haven't finished them on time always
766. The installation of a new computer system _____ at our office.
A. is currently taken place
B. currently is taking place
C. is currently taking place
D. is taking place currently
767. The pictures must be here somewhere because I _____.
A. have just been looking at them
B. just have been looking at them
C. have been just looking at them
D. have been looking just at them
768. I saw the smoke coming from the building, so _____.
A. immediately I rang the fire brigade
B. I rang immediately the fire brigade
C. I immediately rang the fire brigade
D. Both B & C are correct.
769. I have been here an hour, and _____.
A. still I am waiting to see the doctor
B. I still am waiting to see the doctor
C. I am still waiting to see the doctor
D. I am waiting still to see the doctor
770. She _____ during the meeting, apart from making one remark.
A. completely silent
B. was silent completely
C. was completely silent
D. completely was silent

20.

PHRASES

(Cụm từ)

Cụm từ là một nhóm từ tạo thành nghĩa nhưng không đầy đủ. Cụm từ có thể chứa các phân từ (participles), động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitives) nhưng không chứa các động từ đã chia (finite verb).

- 20.1 Cụm phân từ (Participial phrases):** Nhóm từ có chứa hiện tại phân từ hoặc quá khứ phân từ.

Putting down the newspaper, I walked over to the window and looked out.

The city is full of museums *attracting many young people*.

The answer, *unknown to me*, was a well-kept secret.

Frequently called a universal genius, Leonardo da Vinci excelled in many fields.

Cụm phân từ thường là mệnh đề được rút gọn (reduced clauses): *After I put down my newspaper...*, ... *which attract many young people...*, ...*which was unknown to me...*

- 20.2 Cụm giới từ (Prepositional phrases):** Nhóm từ bắt đầu bằng một giới từ:

On his visits to the hospitals, Lincoln found many soldiers suffering from homesickness.

The house *with the green shutters* was now open for public inspection.

- 20.3 Cụm danh động từ (Gerund phrases):** Nhóm từ bắt đầu bằng một danh động từ (gerund):

Swimming across the English Channel is no longer a rare feat. [Subj. of "is"]

The new president does not allow *smoking in schools and hospitals*.

[Obj. of "allow"]

Danh động từ trong cụm từ này có thể có chủ ngữ:

We rely on *our neighbours watering the plants* while we are away.

[our neighbours: subj. of "watering"]

I dislike *people asking me personal questions*.

[people: subj. of "asking"]

20.4 Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (Infinitive phrases): Nhóm từ bắt đầu bằng một động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitives):

I am writing *to enquire about the new courses*.

[Infinitive phrase of purpose]

The prince grew up *to be a handsome young man*.

[Infinitive phrase of outcome]

20.5 Cụm danh từ đồng cách (Noun phrases as appositives): Bắt đầu bằng một danh từ có chức năng đồng cách:

John received the graduation award, *a trophy of bronze and silver*.

The son of poor parents, George nevertheless became a great engineer.

20.6 Cụm tính từ (Adjective phrases): Bắt đầu bằng một tính từ.

Rich and distinctive in flavour, mango is one of the most important fruits in the south.

The weather, *bright and sunny*, had brought everyone out of doors.

20.7 Cụm từ độc lập (Absolute phrases): Chủ từ của cụm từ độc lập khác với chủ từ của mệnh đề chính. Cụm từ độc lập thường chứa một phân từ (participle):

The lights having gone out, they couldn't see a thing.

Everything being in a complete mess, it took her a few hours to tidy up.

Cụm từ độc lập thường bắt đầu với giới từ *with*:

There were scenes of celebration, *with people dancing in the streets*.

With prices going up so fast, there's no point in trying to save money.

CÁC GIỚI TỪ & LIÊN TỪ CÓ CÙNG NGHĨA

Chú ý: Sự khác biệt giữa giới từ (là từ đi trước danh từ) và liên từ (là từ đi trước mệnh đề):

Giới từ	Liên từ	Ví dụ
because of	because/since	He chose that university <i>because of</i> its reputation.
due to	because/since	The accident was <i>due to</i> mechanical failure.
on account of	because/since	Visibility is poor today <i>on account of</i> air pollution.
in spite of	although/even though	He enjoys motorcycle riding <i>in spite of</i> the danger.
despite	although/even though	His voice was shaking, <i>despite</i> all his efforts to control it.
during	when/while	Her father lived in England <i>during</i> the war.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng cụm phân từ và mệnh đề chính có chủ từ không chỉ cùng đối tượng:

*Walking along the street, a car crashed into a lorry.

[Phải viết: Walking along the street, I saw a car crash into a lorry]

*Sitting on the doorway, a bee stung me on the arm.

[Phải viết: Sitting on the doorway, I was stung on the arm by a bee]

- Dùng sai hình thức phân từ:

*Founding in 1076, the Royal College is the oldest university in the country.

[Phải viết: Founded in 1076, the Royal College is the oldest university ...]

- Dùng sai hình thức động từ nguyên mẫu:

*Cross the river was one of the most difficult tasks in our expedition.

[Phải viết: Crossing the river was one of the most...]

- Dùng sai giới từ và liên từ:

*Because his wife being there, I said nothing about it.

[Phải viết: Because of his wife being there...]

*Despite parrots are tropical birds, they can live in temperate or even cold climate.

[Phải viết: Although parrots are tropical birds...]

TEST 20.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

771. Aerodynamics is the study of the forces _____ on an object as it moves through the atmosphere.
- A. acting
B. are acting
C. act
D. acted
772. _____ for their strong fiber include flax and hemp.
- A. Plants are grown
B. Plants that grow
C. Plants grown
D. To grow plants
773. This is the oldest residential street in the country, with _____ from 1640.
- A. houses are dated
B. the dating of houses
C. the dates of the houses
D. houses dating
774. The Democratic Party is older than the other major American Party, _____.
- A. which the Republican Party
B. it is the Republican Party
C. the Republican Party
D. the Republican Party is
775. _____ seed of the flowering plant is covered by a dense protective coat.
- A. On each
B. Each of
C. Each
D. That each
776. Dynamite is ordinarily detonated _____ called a blasting cap.
- A. a device is used
B. with a device
C. that a device
D. the use of a device
777. _____ in front of a camera lens changes the colour of the light that reaches the film.
- A. Placed a filter
B. A filter placed
C. A filter is placed
D. When a filter is placed
778. The Green Tower, _____ in 1802, was the most distinguished building in the old city at that time.
- A. completing
B. was completed
C. completed
D. to be completed
779. Joseph Henry, _____ director of the Smithsonian Institution, was President Lincoln's advisor on scientific matters.
- A. the first
B. was the first
C. to be the first
D. as the first
780. _____ for a career in dance generally begins at an early age.
- A. People train
B. If training
C. That people train
D. Training

781. A baby's first teeth _____ are generally the lower incisors.
A. appearance B. to appear
C. appear D. in appearing
782. Located in Vietnam and Laos, the Truong Son range _____ is home to some of the most threatened species in the world.
A. linking northern Hoa Binh to southern Dong Nai province
B. links northern Hoa Binh to southern Dong Nai province
C. is linking northern Hoa Binh to southern Dong Nai province
D. is linked northern Hoa Binh to southern Dong Nai province
783. Thomas Edison _____ for his invention of the electric bulb.
A. known B. knowing
C. who knows D. is known
784. The solitary scientist _____ by himself has in many instances been replaced by a cooperative scientific team.
A. to make important discoveries B. has many important discoveries
C. important discoveries were made D. making important discoveries
785. A climbing helmet _____ protection for a rock-climber's head from falling rocks and other hazards.
A. to provide B. providing
C. provides D. that provides
786. Power tools require careful handling _____ injuries.
A. by avoiding B. to avoid
C. they avoid D. that avoid
787. Geometry is the branch of mathematics _____ the properties of lines, curves, shapes, and surfaces.
A. that concerned with B. concerned with
C. it is concerned with D. its concerns are
788. Insects provide many beneficial services, such as _____, breaking down deadwood, and pollinating plants.
A. they condition soils B. conditioning the soil
C. to condition soil D. soil conditioned
789. Frozen orange juice must be packed, _____, and stored when the fruit is ripe.
A. be frozen B. frozen
C. must be frozen D. it must be frozen

790. Medical supplies _____ are sent by airplane, which is our fastest means of transportation.
- A. are needed urgently B. that needed urgently
C. that are needed urgently D. which needed urgently
791. A thick layer of fat called blubber keeps whales warm even _____ coldest water.
- A. although B. the
C. in the D. of the
792. A substance that is harmless to a person who has no allergies can cause mild to serious reactions in a person _____ allergies.
- A. has B. can have
C. which having D. with
793. _____ northern America, the general movement of air masses is from west to east.
- A. Across B. The cross
C. To cross D. It's across
794. Oak, _____, is often used to make furniture.
- A. is one of the most durable hard woods
B. one of the most durable hard woods
C. that is one of the most durable hard woods
D. one of the most durable hard woods is
795. Amber is a hard, yellowish-brown _____ from the resin of pine-trees that lived millions of years ago.
- A. substance formed B. substance has formed
C. to form a substance D. forming a substance
796. Unlike most birds, _____.
- A. the heads and necks of vultures lack feathers
B. feathers are not found on the heads and necks of vultures
C. vultures do not have feathers on their heads and necks
D. there are no feathers on vultures' heads and necks
797. The organs of taste are the _____ that are mainly located on the tongue.
- A. groups of cells, are taste buds
B. taste buds, these are groups of cells
C. taste buds, are groups of cells
D. taste buds, groups of cells
798. In physics, _____ "plasma" refers to a gas that has a nearly equal number of

positively and negatively charged particles.

- A. the term
- B. termed
- C. by the term
- D. term

799. Harmonicas and autoharps _____ folk instruments.

- A. are examples
- B. are examples of
- C. for example
- D. as examples of

800. In 1900 electrically powered cars were more popular than gasoline powered cars because they were quiet, operated smoothly, and _____.

- A. handled easily
- B. easy to handle
- C. handling easily
- D. to handle easily

TEST 20.2

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

801. They invented a concept called scientific management, _____ of obtaining as much efficiency from workers and machines as possible.

- A. it is a method
- B. a method
- C. a method which
- D. called a method

802. Compressed air is _____ air brakes, pneumatic tools, and other machinery.

- A. used to powering
- B. used to power
- C. to use powering
- D. in use in powering

803. Some people believe that the crystals of certain minerals _____ curative powers.

- A. have
- B. having
- C. to have
- D. that have

804. The bark of a tree thickens _____.

- A. with age
- B. as older
- C. it gets older
- D. by age

805. Paint can be applied to a surface with rollers, _____, or spray guns.

- A. brushes
- B. with brushes
- C. brushes can be used
- D. by brush

806. The use of labor-saving devices in homes, _____, and in factories added to the amount of leisure time people had.

- A. at office
- B. and offices
- C. used in offices
- D. in offices

807. Throughout history, trade routes have increased contact between people, _____, and greatly affected the growth of civilization.
- have resulted in an exchange of ideas
 - resulted in an exchange of idea
 - an exchange of ideas has resulted
 - resulting in an exchange of ideas
808. Walt Disney made many technical advances in the use of sound, colour, and _____ in animated films.
- photographing
 - photography
 - using photography
 - use of photographs
809. Fearing economic hardship, _____.
- many people emigrated to America in the 1940s
 - emigration from many European countries to America took place in the 1940s
 - it was in the 1940s that many people emigrated to America
 - an emigration took place in the 1940s from many European countries to America
810. _____ such as banking and travel, in which computers are not a convenience but a necessity.
- Where some industries
 - Some industries
 - In some industries
 - There are some industries
811. One of the oldest bridges still _____ today is the West Bird Bridge.
- uses
 - the use of
 - is used
 - in use
812. Orbiting from 2.7 to 3.6 billion miles from the sun, _____.
- the astronomer Tombaugh discovered Pluto in 1930
 - Pluto was discovered by the astronomer Tombaugh in 1930
 - it was in 1930 that the astronomer Tombaugh discovered Pluto
 - the discovery of Pluto was made by Tombaugh in 1930
813. He was a politician, _____ the nation, and an outspoken advocate of religious and political freedom.
- founded
 - was the founder of
 - the founder of
 - he founded
814. Smaller and flatter than an orange, _____.
- a tangerine is easy to peel and its sections separate readily
 - the peel of a tangerine is easily removed its sections are readily separated
 - it is easy to peel a tangerine and to separate its sections
 - to peel a tangerine is easy, and its sections can be readily separated

815. _____ at home requires only three types of chemicals, several pieces of simple equipment, and running water.
- A. For the development of film
 - B. When film is developed
 - C. To develop film
 - D. In developing film
816. The purpose of cost accounting is _____ involved in producing and selling the goods or service.
- A. as a determination of its cost
 - B. that determines the costs
 - C. the costs determined
 - D. to determine the costs
817. _____ was one of the most difficult tasks pioneers faced on their journeys.
- A. Crossing rivers
 - B. Rivers being crossed
 - C. Cross rivers
 - D. By crossing rivers
818. The process of _____ by hand has changed little since the fifteenth century.
- A. to bind books
 - B. bind books
 - C. binding books
 - D. bound books
819. A popular instrument, _____.
- A. only a limited role has been available to the accordion in classical music
 - B. there is only a limited role for the accordion in popular music
 - C. classical music provides only a limited role for the accordion
 - D. the accordion has played only a limited role in classical music
820. Energy can be defined as the ability _____.
- A. to do working
 - B. doing work
 - C. to do work
 - D. work to be done
821. In 1959 she became the first woman _____ a full professor at Princeton University.
- A. to appoint
 - B. to be appointed
 - C. was appointed
 - D. appointed
822. Widely reproduced in magazines and books, _____.
- A. Adams depicted the Western wildness in his photographs
 - B. the Western wildness was depicted in the photographs of Adams
 - C. Adams' photographs depicted the Western wildness
 - D. it was through his photographs that Adams depicted the Western wildness
823. The first library _____ in the region was built near the Central Museum.
- A. to be established
 - B. could establish
 - C. was established
 - D. to establish

824. The artist travelled throughout Northwest Canada on foot, by canoe, and _____ to sketch native Canadians going about their ordinary lives.
- A. on horseback
B. riding on a horse
C. riding a horse
D. by a horse
825. Even after the Revolutionary War, American importers obtained merchandise from Britain because British merchants understood American tastes, offered attractive prices, and _____.
- A. easy credit was provided
B. easy credit
C. provided easy credit
D. because of easy credit
826. Like the central government, _____.
- A. taxation provides most of the funds for provinces and local governments as well
B. provinces and local governments obtain most of their funds through taxation
C. through taxation is how provinces and local governments obtain most of their funds
D. funds are provided from taxation for provinces and local governments
827. _____ charming shops and restaurants, Old Town is the picturesque section of the region.
- A. With its
B. Because its
C. Its
D. For its
828. Photographers' choice of a camera depends on what kind of pictures they want to take, how much control they want over exposure, and _____ they want to spend.
- A. the amount of money
B. how much money
C. the money
D. the number of money
829. Sydney is the commercial, financial, and _____ of New South Wales.
- A. centre of administration
B. administrative centre
C. administering centre
D. centre for administration
830. Unlike most modernist poets, _____ based on ordinary speech.
- A. Robert Frost's poems were
B. the works of Robert Frost were
C. Robert Frost wrote poems that were
D. the poetry written by Robert Frost was

21.

CLAUSES

(Mệnh đề)

21.1 Clauses (Mệnh đề):

Mệnh đề là một nhóm từ có chứa một động từ đã chia (finite verb) và chủ ngữ của nó. Động từ đã chia là động từ đã hòa hợp với chủ ngữ của nó về ngôi và số. Mệnh đề cũng có thể chứa các thành phần khác, như tân ngữ (object), bổ ngữ (complement), các tính từ (adjective), phó từ (adverb) v.v....:

<u>The old</u>	<u>woman</u>	<u>waited</u>	<u>very patiently</u>	<u>for two hours.</u>
(adj)	(noun as subject)	(finite verb)	(adverb)	(adverb)

Trong thực hành, chúng ta có thể biết một câu có bao nhiêu mệnh đề bằng cách căn cứ vào số lượng các động từ đã chia (FV).

Judy *lives* in northern California now, but she *was raised* in Ohio.

[2 FV, 2 mệnh đề]

Many cities *have* drive-in movies, where you *can* watch a film without leaving your car.

[2 FV, 2 mệnh đề]

I *became* a journalist when I *was* twenty-five, and I *have* enjoyed it because every day *is* interesting.

[4 FV, 4 mệnh đề]

Chú ý hai ví dụ sau cùng có chứa các động từ như "leaving" và "enjoyed" là các phân từ (participles), không phải là các động từ đã chia.

21.2 Subordinate Clauses (Mệnh đề phụ):

Mệnh đề phụ là mệnh đề được bắt đầu bằng các từ như *who*, *which*, *that*, *before*, *until*, *because* v.v... Căn cứ vào các từ này, mệnh đề phụ được phân loại thành:

21.2.1 Adjective Clauses (Mệnh đề tính ngữ):

Mệnh đề tính ngữ (còn gọi là mệnh đề liên hệ) là mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng các đại từ liên hệ *who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, *whose*, *of which* và các phó từ liên hệ *why*, *when*, *where*. Do vậy, chúng còn được gọi là *mệnh đề liên hệ*.

A neurologist is a doctor *who specializes in the nervous system*.

[who = doctor; subj. of "specializes"]

They decided to import things *that we could produce ourselves*.

[that = things, obj. of "produce"]

We stopped to help a driver *whose car had broken down*.

[whose = driver's]

The police received a number of bomb warnings, *all of which turned out to be false alarms*. [of which = of bomb warnings]

Here is the site *where the National Bank plans to build its new headquarters*. [where = in the site]

Khi mệnh đề tính ngữ được dùng như một lời nói thêm, bổ sung thông tin cho câu, chúng được tách khỏi các phần khác của câu bằng dấu phẩy, ngoặc đơn hoặc gạch nối:

Einstein, *who failed his university entrance exam*, went on to discover relativity.

The dog (*whose name is Spot*) is a birthday present from her mother.

The new director is nicer than the old one – *whom the staff disliked*.

Mệnh đề tính ngữ có thể giản lược và trở thành các cụm từ không chứa các động từ đã chia (FV):

(i) Mệnh đề tính ngữ rút gọn với phân từ (Reduced adjective clauses with participles):

The Royal College, *which was founded in 1076*, is the oldest university in this country. [full adj. clause]

The Royal College, *founded in 1076*, is the oldest university in this country. [reduced adj. clause]

Applications *which are received after the deadline* cannot be considered. [full adj. clause]

Applications *received after the deadline* cannot be considered. [reduced adj. clause]

People *who travelled into the city every day* are used to the hold-ups.

People *travelling into the city every day* are used to the hold-ups.

(ii) Mệnh đề tính ngữ rút gọn với danh từ đồng cách (Reduced adjective clauses with appositives):

Oak, *which is one of the most durable hard woods*, is often used to make furniture.

Oak, *one of the most durable hard woods*, is often used to make furniture.

(iii) **Mệnh đề tính ngữ rút gọn với động từ nguyên mẫu** (Reduced adjective clauses with *to*-infinitives):

Chúng ta dùng mệnh đề tính ngữ rút gọn với động từ nguyên mẫu sau các số thứ tự (first, second...), hình thức so sánh bậc nhất (oldest...), *next*, *last*, *only*:

Who was the first person *that conquered Mount Everest*?

Who was the first person *to conquer Mount Everest*?

She is the only student *who has signed up for the course*.

She is the only student *to sign up for the course*.

The victim is the third one *that has been killed in this way*.

The victim is the third one *to be killed in this way*.

21.2.2 Adverb Clauses (Mệnh đề trạng ngữ):

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ là mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng:

- các liên từ chỉ nguyên nhân như *because*, *as*, *since*, *seeing that*.
- các liên từ chỉ mục đích như *so that*, *in order that*, *for fear that*, *in case*.
- các liên từ chỉ thời gian như *when*, *while*, *before*, *after*, *since*, *as*, *till*, *until*, *as soon as*, *once*
- các liên từ chỉ thể cách như *as*, *as if*, *as though*.
- các liên từ chỉ kết quả như *so + adj + that*, *such + n + that*
- các liên từ chỉ sự tương phản như *though*, *although*, *no matter...*
- các liên từ chỉ điều kiện như *if*, *unless*, *provided that*, *supposing*
- các liên từ chỉ sự so sánh như *as + adj + as*, *-er than*

Các ví dụ:

Don't put off going to the dentist *until you have a problem*.

Since credit cards are so convenient, many people use them.

Some people arrived in taxis *while others took the subway*.

Once you have done the basic course, you can go on to the more advanced one.

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ có thể giản lược và trở thành các cụm từ không chứa các động từ đã chia (FV). Sự rút gọn có thể thực hiện với *although*, *while*, *if*, *when*, *before*, *after*, *until* nhưng **không** với *because*:

(i) **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ rút gọn với phân từ** (Reduced adjective clauses with participles):

Although it had been damaged, the machine was still operational.

[full adverb clause]

Although damaged, the machine was still operational.

[reduced adv. clause with a past participle]

(ii) **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ rút gọn với tính từ** (Reduced adjective clauses with adjectives):

Although he was nervous, he gave a wonderful speech.

[full adverb clause]

Although nervous, he gave a wonderful speech.

[reduced adv. clause with an adjective]

21.2.3 Noun Clauses (Mệnh đề danh từ):

Mệnh đề danh từ thường bắt đầu với *that*, *if*, *whether* hoặc một từ dùng để hỏi như *what*, *when*, *where*, *how*.

(i) **Mệnh đề danh từ làm chủ ngữ:**

When the summit meeting will be held has not been decided.

[Subj. of "has not been decided"]

That a majority of shareholders didn't attend the meeting is natural.

[Subj. of "is"]

ii) **Mệnh đề danh từ làm tân ngữ:**

We know *that the astronauts were very tired after their long trip*.

[Obj. of "know"]

The figures show *how much the population has increased*.

[Obj. of "show"]

(iii) **Mệnh đề danh từ với chức năng đồng cách:**

You can't deny the fact *that his fingerprints were on the gun*.

[apposition to "the fact"]

There's a rumour going round *that the exam papers have been stolen*.

[apposition to "rumour"]

(iv) Mệnh đề danh từ làm bổ ngữ:

The advantage of DVD is *that it gives you much better picture quality*.

[Complement of "is"]

It seems *that the company has made a mistake in its marketing strategy*.

[Complement of "seems"]

Mệnh đề danh từ có thể được rút gọn trong một vài trường hợp chủ yếu về nghĩa:

We hope *that better times will come*.

We hope *for better times to come*.

That I was successful does not make me happy.

My success does not make me happy.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Mệnh đề tính ngữ thiếu đại từ liên hệ:

*I think the man is talking to John works for my company.

[Phải viết: "...the man **who** is talking to ..."]

*My best friend was Tom, at his wedding I had first met my future wife.

[Phải viết: "...at **whose** wedding I had ..."]

- Mệnh đề tính ngữ thiếu động từ:

*Asking questions, which essential in learning a language, can be difficult for beginners.

[Phải viết: "...which **is** essential in ..."]

- Dùng mệnh đề tính ngữ rút gọn với hành động đã hoàn tất:

*The man *escaping from prison* is said to be dangerous.

[Không được rút gọn. Phải viết: "The man **who escaped** from ..."]

*The man *throwing the bomb* was arrested.

[Không được rút gọn. Phải viết: "The man **who threw the bomb** was..."]

- Dùng *but* đi với *although* trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ:

*Although John was tired but he kept on working until midnight.

[Phải viết: "Although John was tired he kept on..."]

- Dùng sai đại từ liên hệ trong mệnh đề danh từ đồng cách:

*The news *which the plane had crashed* came as a terrible shock.

[Phải viết: "...that the plane had crashed..." Chú ý *that* ở đây là liên từ, không phải là đại từ.]

- Không dùng *that* trong mệnh đề danh từ đồng cách:

*Whatever gave you the idea I can sing?

[Phải viết: "...the idea **that** I can sing". Chú ý không bỏ *that* trong trường hợp này.]

TEST 21.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

831. Certain fish eggs contain droplets, _____ to float on the surface of the water.
A. allowing them B. they are allowed
C. this allows them D. allows them
832. In many countries, _____ is the responsibility of local governments.
A. for water treatment B. where water treatment
C. water treatment D. in which water treatment
833. Crop rotation _____ of preserving soil fertility.
A. it is one method B. a method is one
C. one method D. is one method
834. _____ almost impossible to capture the beauty of the sunset in the
photographs.
A. Being B. There is
C. It is D. That is
835. Usually political cartoons _____ on the editorial page of a newspaper.
A. appear B. appearing
C. that appear D. which appear
836. _____ gas tanks connected to welding equipment, one full of oxygen and the
other full of acetylene.
A. It is two B. There are two
C. Two D. Of the two

837. Most folk songs are ballads _____ have simple words and tell simple stories.
A. what B. when
C. although D. that
838. After its introduction in 1969, the float process _____ the world's principal method of manufacturing flat sheets of glass.
A. by which it became B. became
C. it became D. which became
839. _____ more interested in rhythm than in melody is apparent from his poems.
A. That the poet B. The poet
C. That the poet is D. The poet is
840. Compressed air _____ the power to drive pneumatic tools.
A. which provides B. that provides
C. provides D. providing
841. _____ primary colours are red, blue, and yellow.
A. There are three B. That the three
C. The three D. That three
842. Small sailboats can easily capsize _____ they are not handled carefully.
A. but B. if
C. unless D. so
843. _____ they are tropical birds, parrots can live in temperate or even cold climate.
A. Despite B. Nevertheless
C. Even though D. But
844. _____ was caused by breathing impure air over was once a common belief.
A. Malaria B. Why malaria
C. That malaria D. The reason malaria
845. Scientists cannot agree on _____ related to other insects.
A. that fleas are B. how are fleas
C. how fleas are D. fleas that are
846. Every computer consists of a number of systems _____ together.
A. by working B. they work
C. work D. that work
847. On the Moon, _____ air because the Moon's gravitational field is too weak to retain an atmosphere.
A. there is no B. no
C. it is no D. having no

848. Many of her sculptures consisted of a number of large wooden structures _____ in complex patterns.
A. which she arranged B. which arranged
C. she arranged them D. arranged them
849. In addition to being a naturalist, he was a writer _____ struggle for the survival of his countrymen.
A. whose novels describe B. with his novels describe
C. describes in his novels D. who describing in his novels
850. Diamonds are often found in rock formation called pipes, _____ the throats of extinct volcanoes.
A. in which they resemble B. there is a resemblance to
C. which resemble D. they resemble
851. _____ added to a liquid, antifreeze lowers the freezing temperature of that liquid.
A. That B. It is
C. As is D. When
852. _____ advertising is so widespread in the United States, it has had an enormous effect on American life.
A. Why B. On account of
C. The reason why D. Since
853. _____ toward shore, its shape is changed by its collision with the shallow sea bottom.
A. During a wave rolls B. A wave rolls
C. As a wave rolls D. A wave's rolling
854. _____ is a narrow strip of woods along a stream in an open grassland.
A. Ecologists use the term "gallery forest"
B. What do ecologists call a "gallery forest"
C. "Gallery forest" is the term ecologists use
D. What ecologists call a "gallery forest"
855. _____ developed so rapidly in Alabama primarily because of its rich natural resources.
A. That heavy industry B. Heavy industry that was
C. Heavy industry D. When heavy industry
856. _____ so incredible is that these insects successfully migrate to places that they have never seen.
A. That makes the monarch butterflies' migration
B. The migration of the monarch butterflies is
C. What makes the monarch butterflies' migration
D. The migration of the monarch butterflies, which is

857. My friend John, _____ helped build the only high school in the region, became the first mayor of the city.
- A. whom he had B. who had
C. and he had D. had
858. In some cases, _____ to decide if an organism is a plant or an animal.
- A. it is difficult B. the difficult is
C. they are difficult D. being difficult
859. _____ important railroad tunnel in the United States was cut through the Hoosac Mountains in Massachusetts.
- A. At first B. The first
C. It was the first D. As the first of
860. Generally, _____ in the valleys and foothills of the Langbian Highlands.
- A. the white rose grown B. the white rose grows
C. the growth of the white rose D. growing the white rose

TEST 21.2

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

861. Although not as important as they once were, _____ a major form of transportation in many European countries.
- A. there are still railroads B. railroads are still
C. railroads, which are still D. railroads still being
862. _____ amino acids that serve as the basic building blocks of all proteins.
- A. It was about twenty B. About twenty are
C. For about twenty of D. There are about twenty
863. Seals appear clumsy on land, _____ are able to move short distance faster than most people can run.
- A. but they B. they
C. which they D. which
864. The instrument panel of a light airplane has at least a dozen instruments _____.
- A. the pilot must watch B. which the pilot must watch them
C. what the pilot must watch D. such that the pilot must watch them
865. _____ are increasingly linked over long distances by electric communications, but many of them still prefer face-to-face encounters.
- A. Although B. Today people
C. Despite D. The fact that people

866. _____ together in one place, they form a community.
 A. When people who live B. Whenever people live
 C. When people living D. Whenever living people
867. _____ managed by an independent governor and board of directors, the Bank of Canada is owned by the Canadian government.
 A. Yet B. Although
 C. In spite of it D. It is
868. A keystone species is a species of plants or animals _____ absence has a major effect on an ecological system.
 A. that is B. whose
 C. its D. with its
869. The size and shape of a nail depends primarily on the function _____ intended.
 A. which it is B. which it is for
 C. for which it is D. for which is
870. In geometry, a tangent is a straight line _____ a curve at only one point.
 A. it touches B. its touching
 C. whose touching D. that touches
871. It was Johann Strauss II _____ the *Blue Danube*, perhaps the best known of all waltzes.
 A. wrote B. who wrote
 C. the writer of D. writing
872. There are over 2,000 varieties of snakes, _____ are harmless to human.
 A. mostly they B. most of which
 C. most of them D. which most of them
873. Smokejumpers are _____ descend into remote areas by parachute to fight forest fires.
 A. firefighters B. who, as firefighters
 C. when firefighters D. firefighters who
874. Charlotte Gilman's best known book _____ she urges woman to become financially independent.
 A. is *Women and Economics*, in which
 B. is *Women and Economics*, which
 C. *Women and Economics*, in which
 D. *Women and Economics*, which
875. _____, the seeds of the Kentucky coffee plant are poisonous.
 A. Until they have been cooked B. They have been cooked
 C. Cooking them D. Cooked until

876. Natural silk is still highly prized _____ similar artificial fabrics.
 A. although is available B. in spite of the availability of
 C. despite there are available D. even though an availability of
877. Cattle ranches are found almost _____ in the region.
 A. wherever B. overall
 C. everywhere D. somewhere
878. _____ through a prism, a beam of white light breaks into all the colours of the rainbow.
 A. When shines B. It is shone
 C. As shines D. When shone
879. _____ most people think of freezing as a relatively modern method of food preservation, it is actually one of the oldest.
 A. Even B. However
 C. As though D. Although
880. _____ large bodies of water never freeze solid is that the sheet of ice on the surface protects the water below it from the cold air.
 A. Because B. The reason that
 C. Why do D. For the reason
881. _____ granted by the Patent Office, it becomes the inventor's property and he or she can keep it, sell it, or license it to someone else.
 A. Once a patent is B. A patent, once
 C. When a patent D. A patent, whenever it
882. In order to grow vegetables properly, gardeners must know _____.
 A. what the requirements for each vegetable are
 B. that the requirements for each vegetable
 C. what are each vegetable's requirements
 D. that is required by each vegetable
883. When _____ is not known.
 A. was the wheel invented B. inventing the wheel
 C. the invention of the wheel D. the wheel was invented
884. For many years people have wondered _____ exists elsewhere in the universe.
 A. that life B. whether life
 C. life which D. life as it
885. _____ of all modern domestic poultry is the red jungle fowl is widely believed.
 A. The ancestor B. How the ancestor
 C. The ancestor is D. That the ancestor

886. _____ the right side of a person's brain is dominant, that person is left-handed.
A. That B. Which
C. If D. For
887. _____ will be suitable for the dance that will be held on Saturday.
A. Whatever you wear tonight B. What do you wear tonight
C. That you wear tonight D. Whatever do you wear tonight
888. One basic question psychologists have tried to answer is _____.
A. the learning of people B. people learn how
C. how do people learn D. how people learn
889. Alexander Fleming, _____, received the Nobel prize in 1945.
A. who discovered penicillin B. he discovered penicillin
C. discovering penicillin D. that discovered penicillin
890. The Egyptians constructed walls and tombs _____ marvels even today.
A. they are considered B. are considered
C. which are considered D. who are considered

22. LINKING ADVERBS & CONJUNCTIONS

(Các phó từ & liên từ nối)

Các phó từ và liên từ nối được dùng để liên kết các ý tưởng với nhau. Chúng thường diễn tả các mối quan hệ như sự tương phản (but, yet, nevertheless), mâu thuẫn (on the contrary), kết quả (consequently, as a result), thứ tự (firstly, secondly) v.v...

22.1 Diễn tả một khía cạnh (aspect): Economically, environmentally, from an architectural point of view...

Financially, the project will not be viable without government funding.
(= Về mặt tài chính)

As far as insurance is concerned, we will pay the cost of any repairs.
(= Về mặt bảo hiểm)

22.2 Diễn tả mức độ (degree): Certainly, perhaps, maybe...

Basically, I agree with your proposals, but there are a few points we'd like to discuss further. (= Về cơ bản)

Clearly, this will cost a lot more than we realized. (= Điều hiển nhiên [là])

22.3 Diễn tả sự bình phẩm hoặc ý kiến (comment/opinion): Luckily, surprisingly, hopefully, to (my) surprise, frankly...

Fortunately, nobody was hurt in the accident. (= May làm sao)

Wisely the cashier didn't argue with the gunman. (= Một cách khôn ngoan)

22.4 Diễn tả sự tương phản hoặc trái ngược (contrast/contradicting): But, yet, however, nevertheless...

I know you don't believe these stories. *Nevertheless*, they are all perfectly true.
(= Tuy nhiên)

I have never been an enemy of monarchy; *on the contrary*, I consider monarchy essential for the well-being of new nations. (= Ngược lại)

22.5 Diễn tả sự bổ sung (adding): Besides, what's more, in addition, furthermore, moreover...

It's dangerous to ride a motorbike without a helmet. *What's more*, it's against the law. (= Hơn thế nữa)

The country was hit hard by the oil crisis. *Moreover*, its economy was already extremely weak. (= Hơn thế nữa)

22.6 Diễn tả kết quả (result): So, as a result, consequently, thus, therefore...

More women are needed in employment. *As a result*, they have less time for their families. (= Kết quả là)

The rocket was incorrectly assembled, and *consequently* it crashed. (= Kết quả là)

22.7 Diễn tả thứ tự (ordering): Firstly, secondly, finally, in the end, in conclusion...

Of course the man is guilty. *Firstly*, he had a motive, and *secondly*, his fingerprints were on the gun.

In conclusion, I'd like to say a few words about the future prospects of the plan. (= Để kết thúc)

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng từ nối không phù hợp:

*The fire destroyed thousands of home. *Moreover*, only six people lost their lives.

[Phải viết: "... *However*, only six people lost their lives]

*It hasn't rained for ages, *nevertheless* the ground is very dry.

[Phải viết: "... *so/consequently* the ground is very dry."]

- Dùng sai từ:

*I'm too tired to go for a walk. *Beside*, it looks like rain.

[Phải viết: "... *Besides*, it looks like rain."]

*Police have made several inquiries, and *in addition to* the murdered man's family have appealed to the public for information.

[Phải viết: "... *and in addition* the murdered man's family...."]

TEST 22.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

891. It was a cold winter night. We went inside and shut the windows _____ a storm was coming.
- A. on account of
B. despite
C. because
D. provided that
892. _____ it was cold outside, my friends went swimming in the lake.
- A. Despite
B. Although
C. Provided that
D. In spite of
893. A fire must have a readily available supply of oxygen. _____, it will stop burning.
- A. Consequently
B. Furthermore
C. Otherwise
D. However
894. Alex cannot express himself clearly and correctly in writing. He will never advance in his job _____ he improves his language skills.
- A. otherwise
B. if
C. only if
D. unless
895. Ancient Egyptians mummified their dead bodies through the use of chemicals, _____ ancient Peruvians mummified their dead bodies through natural processes by putting dead bodies in extremely dry desert caves.
- A. whereas
B. because
C. even though
D. whether or not
896. Bats are fascinating _____ have many interesting and amazing qualities.
- A. animal. Therefore, they
B. animals, they
C. animals. They
D. animals. Because they
897. _____ Paul has a new car, he no longer takes the commuter train to work every day.
- A. Now that
B. While
C. Although
D. In case
898. Brian used to be an active person, but now he has to limit his activities _____ problems with his health.
- A. nevertheless
B. because of
C. although
D. in spite of
899. Camels have either one hump or two humps. The Arabian camel has one hump. The Bactrian camel, _____, has two humps.
- A. nevertheless
B. however
C. furthermore
D. otherwise

900. Carol showed up for the meeting _____ I asked her not to be there.
A. even though B. despite
C. provided that D. because
901. Emily is motivated to study _____ she knows that a good education can improve her life.
A. therefore B. because of
C. because D. so
902. Even though a duck may live on water, it stays dry _____ the oil on its feathers. The oil prevents the water from soaking through the feathers and reaching its skins.
A. due to B. besides
C. in spite of D. in the event of
903. Ever since _____ Ted the bad news, he's been avoiding me.
A. telling B. told
C. I told D. having told
904. _____ excellent art museums, Moscow has a world-famous ballet company.
A. Because of B. In spite of
C. In case of D. In addition to
905. _____ extremely bad weather in the mountains, we're no longer considering our skiing trip.
A. Due to B. Because
C. Since D. Due to the fact that
906. Florida is famous for its tourist attractions. Its coastline offers excellent white sand beaches. _____ it has warm, sunny weather.
A. Otherwise B. Furthermore
C. Nevertheless D. On the other hand
907. Hundreds of species of Hawaiian flowers have become extinct or rare _____ land development and the grazing of wild goats.
A. now that B. due to
C. because D. for
908. I'm sorry you've decided not to go with us on the river trip, but _____ you change your mind, there will still be enough room on the boat for you.
A. even B. nevertheless
C. in the event that D. provided that
909. I asked Angela to run the office while I'm gone _____ I know I can depend on her.
A. unless B. since
C. although D. therefore

910. _____ I can't make the presentation myself, I've asked my assistant to do it for me.
 A. For B. In the event that
 C. Only if D. On the other hand
911. I can't ride my bicycle _____ there isn't any air in one of the tires.
 A. despite B. because
 C. although D. but
912. I got to class on time _____ I had missed my bus.
 A. even though B. nevertheless
 C. because D. despite
913. I have to go to the meeting _____ I want to or not.
 A. provided that B. whether
 C. Even if D. only if
914. I like to keep the windows open at night no matter how cold it gets. My wife,
 _____, prefers a warm bedroom with all windows tightly shut.
 A. therefore B. consequently
 C. on the other hand D. moreover
915. I studied Spanish for four years in high school. _____, I had trouble talking
 with people when I was travelling in Spain.
 A. Therefore B. On the other hand
 C. Moreover D. Nevertheless
916. I think I did okay in my speech last night _____ I'd had almost no sleep for 24 hours.
 A. even B. in spite of
 C. unless D. despite the fact that
917. My staff and I worked late into the evening. _____ we were very tired, we
 stopped at our favourite restaurant before we went home.
 A. Even though B. Despite
 C. Moreover D. Consequently
918. We can see the light from an airplane high in the sky at night before we can hear the
 plane _____ light travels faster than sound.
 A. because B. on account of
 C. although D. in the event of
919. John ate dinner with us at our home last night. _____ I expected him to stay
 and help with the dishes, he left right after dinner.
 A. Because B. On account of
 C. Although D. Nevertheless

920. I couldn't get the way out. _____, I decided that the best thing to do was to ask Tim for help.
- A. Consequently
 - B. In the end
 - C. In conclusion
 - D. Fortunately

23. EMPHASIS WITH *IT & WHAT*

(Cách nhấn mạnh với *it & what*)

Chúng ta có thể nhấn mạnh một thành phần nào đó của câu bằng cách dùng *it* hoặc *what*.

23.1 Nhấn mạnh với *it*:

Chúng ta xem câu:

Alfred Nobel invented dynamite in 1866.

- **Nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ** *Alfred Nobel*:

It was *Alfred Nobel* who invented dynamite in 1866.

- **Nhấn mạnh tân ngữ** *dynamite*:

It was *dynamite* that Alfred Nobel invented in 1866.

- **Nhấn mạnh phó từ** *in 1866*:

It was *in 1866* that Alfred Nobel invented dynamite.

Khi đại từ nhân xưng đi sau *be*, hình thức thông dụng là hình thức đại từ làm tân ngữ (me, her, him...):

It was me who phoned you, remember?

It wasn't us who caused all the trouble.

23.2 Nhấn mạnh với *what*:

You need a personal computer for your research.

What you need for your research is a personal computer.

TEST 23.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để diễn tả lỗi nói nhấn mạnh:

921. Ann stole the books, not Margaret.
A. It is Ann who stole the books, rather Margaret.
B. It is not Margaret, but Ann who stole the books.
C. It is the books that Margaret didn't steal instead of Ann.
D. It is the books that is not Margaret, but Ann owed the stealing
922. As he was foretold, he wasn't surprised at all when he viewed things happening.
A. It is not the surprise that he has as he was foretold.
B. It was not until things happened did was he surprised.
C. What he saw did not make him surprised.
D. All are correct.
923. Did we suffer and toil for this?
A. Was it for this that we suffered and toiled?
B. Was it this that we suffered and toiled?
C. Was it that we suffered and toiled?
D. All are correct.
924. He has spoiled the whole thing since he took part in the activity.
A. What he's done is spoil the whole thing.
B. It is since he took part in the activity that he spoiled the whole thing.
C. It is the activity that he took part in makes he spoil the whole thing.
D. None is correct.
925. He's painted the wall blue.
A. It is blue that he's painted the wall.
B. It is the wall that he painted blue.
C. It is the wall blue that he painted.
D. All are correct.
926. He was frightened by the appalling silence of the place.
A. It was by the appalling silence of the place was he frightened.
B. It was by the appalling silence of the place that he was frightened.
C. What made him frightened was the appalling silence of the place.
D. All are correct.
927. He wrote that book during his holiday in Vietnam.
A. It was during his holiday in Vietnam when he wrote his book.
B. It was his holiday that he wrote his book in Vietnam.

C. It was Vietnam that he wrote his book.

D. It was while he was on holiday in Vietnam that he wrote that book.

928. I didn't realize he was your brother until I saw the photograph.

A. It is until I saw the photograph which I didn't realize he was your brother.

B. It is until I saw the photograph did I realize he was your brother.

C. It was only when I saw the photograph that I realized he was your brother.

D. It was when I saw the photograph did I realized he was your brother.

929. I didn't see anything I wanted to buy in this shop.

A. What I wanted was not sold in this shop.

B. It was not anything that I wanted to buy in this shop.

C. It was in this shop that I could buy anything.

D. None is correct.

930. I first noticed it in September.

A. It was in September that I first noticed it.

B. It was not until September that I noticed it.

C. It was September that I first noticed it in.

D. All are correct.

931. I gave the water to the dog.

A. It was the dog that I gave the water.

B. It was that I gave the water to the dog.

C. It was the dog that I gave the water to.

D. It was the water that I gave it to the dog.

932. I was complaining to you about the girl, not the boy.

A. It's the girl that I was complaining about.

B. It's not the boy that I was complaining about, rather the girl.

C. It's that I was complaining to you about the girl, not the boy.

D. It's the girl that the boy cannot be replaced in my complaints.

933. John and Mary moved to New York twenty years ago.

A. It is New York twenty years ago that John and Mary moved to.

B. It is twenty years that John and Mary moved to New York.

C. It is to move to New York that John and Mary do twenty years ago.

D. It is twenty years since John and Mary moved to New York.

934. John wore his best suit to the dance last night.

A. It was his best suit that John wore to the dance last night.

B. It was John who wore his best suit to the dance last night.

C. It was to the dance that John wore his best suit last night.

D. All are correct.

935. Last night, Tom didn't go to his friend's party. He went to the cinema.
- A. It was to the cinema that Tom didn't go to his friend's party.
 - B. It wasn't Tom's friend's party, but the cinema that he went to last night.
 - C. It was not only the cinema but also the friend's party did Tom go to last night.
 - D. None is correct.
936. We want to discuss this matter with our boss, not his secretary.
- A. It was this matter that we want to discuss with our boss, not his secretary.
 - B. It was our boss, not his secretary that we want to discuss this matter.
 - C. It was that we want to discuss this matter with our boss, not his secretary.
 - D. It was not only our boss but also his secretary that we want to discuss this matter with.
937. Mr. Brown would like to meet the principal, not the vice-principal.
- A. It is the principal, not the vice-principal that Mr. Brown would like to meet.
 - B. It was the principal, not the vice-principal that Mr. Brown would like to meet.
 - C. It is that the principal, not the vice-principal that Mr. Brown would like to meet.
 - D. It is not the vice-principal that Mr. Brown would like to meet, rather the principal.
938. You made a glorious bonfire!
- A. It was a bonfire that is so glorious made by you!
 - B. What a glorious bonfire it was you made!
 - C. None is correct.
 - D. Both are correct.
939. She wanted to talk to you, not him.
- A. It was you that she wanted to talk to him.
 - B. It was that she wanted to talk to you, not him.
 - C. It was you, not him who she wanted to talk to.
 - D. It was you that she did not want to talk to.
940. She wrote the letter to Tom, not Peter.
- A. It was Tom, not Peter who she wrote the letter to.
 - B. It was to Tom, not Peter who she wrote the letter to.
 - C. It was not Peter that she wrote the letter to, rather Tom.
 - D. It was that she wrote the letter to Tom, not Peter.
941. The United Nations didn't come into existence until 1945.
- A. It is 1945 that the United Nations came into existence.
 - B. It was in 1945 that the United Nations came into existence.
 - C. It was the United Nations which comes into existence in 1945.
 - D. It is to come into existence that the United Nations did in 1945.

942. You must have seen my brother at the station yesterday!
- A. It was my brother that you must have seen at the station yesterday.
 - B. It must have been my brother that you saw at the station yesterday.
 - C. It should have been my brother that you saw at the station yesterday.
 - D. All are correct.
943. The only way that the burglar could escape was to jump through the window.
- A. It must have been the window that the burglar jumped through to escape.
 - B. The window helped the burglar to escape by jumping through.
 - C. It is to jump through the window could the burglar escape.
 - D. All are correct.
944. The war veterans met each other in the Independence Hall.
- A. It was in the Independence Hall that the war veterans met each other.
 - B. It was the Independence Hall which the war veterans met each other.
 - C. It was the war veterans in the Independence Hall who met each other.
 - D. It was the veterans that the war met in the Independence Hall.
945. They are ruining the economy.
- A. It is the economy that they are ruined.
 - B. It is the economy that has been ruined by them.
 - C. What they are doing is ruining the economy.
 - D. All are correct.
946. They insisted on settling the disputes with the Chinese, not the Taiwanese.
- A. It was settling the dispute with the Chinese, not the Taiwanese that they insisted.
 - B. It was the Chinese, not the Taiwanese that they insisted on settling the dispute with.
 - C. It was the dispute with the Chinese, not the Taiwanese that they insisted with.
 - D. It was not only the Taiwanese but also the Chinese that they insisted on settling the dispute with.
947. We decided to return because he was ill.
- A. It was because of the illness of him that we decided to return.
 - B. It was because he was ill that we decided to return.
 - C. It was he was ill that we decided to return.
 - D. None is correct.
948. We didn't rest until our friends came.
- A. It was until our friends came that we couldn't rest.
 - B. It was until our friends came did we rest.
 - C. It was not until our friends came that we rested.
 - D. It was only when our friends came that we rest.

949. We learned English five years ago.

- A. It is five years since we learned English.
- B. It is five years counted from the first day we learned English.
- C. It was five years ago since we learned English.
- D. It was English five years ago that we learned English.

950. We've painted the kitchen dark green.

- A. It is dark green that we've painted the kitchen.
- B. It is the kitchen dark green that we've been painted.
- C. It is the kitchen that have been painted dark green.
- D. It is the painting of dark green that our kitchen has been done.

24. AGREEMENT OF SUBJECTS AND VERBS

(Sự hoà hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ)

- 24.1 Danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns) (xem chương 13) kết hợp với động từ số ít:**

The grass *is* growing all over the field.

Cow milk *is* the most important product of this farm.

- 24.2 Các danh từ nối với nhau bằng *and* kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:**

Wheat and maize *are* exported to many European countries.

Bread and butter *were* bought in large quantities.

Nhưng khi các danh từ tạo thành một ý tưởng duy nhất, chúng kết hợp với động từ số ít:

Bread and butter *was* all we had. [= bread with butter on it]

- 24.3 Với các danh từ nối với nhau bằng *or, either ... or..., not ... but, not only ... but also*, động từ kết hợp với danh từ gần nhất:**

Either the Internet or these books *are* where you'll find the information.

Not only John but also his father *was* killed in the accident.

- 24.4 Với các danh từ nối với nhau bằng *with, like, as well as, together with, along with, in addition to, other than*, động từ kết hợp với danh từ đầu tiên:**

The kitchen, as well as the toilet, *is* painted in blue.

Tom, together with some of his friends, *is* attending a club meeting.

- 24.5 Các danh từ chỉ sự đo lường, thời gian, khoảng cách; các nhan đề sách, các đại từ bất định (something, everyone...) thường kết hợp với động từ số ít:**

Five minutes *is* not enough to read all the reports of the week.

Everybody *is* having a good time.

24.6 Some, part, all, most, almost, the rest, the remainder of và các phân số kết hợp với động từ số nhiều hoặc số ít tùy theo danh từ theo sau of:

- (a) Động từ ở hình thức số ít nếu danh từ ở hình thức số ít.
- (b) Động từ ở hình thức số nhiều nếu danh từ ở hình thức số nhiều.

Most of English verbs are regular.

Three quarters of an orange is water.

24.7 Danh từ tập hợp (group, crowd, company, family...) thường đi với động từ số ít:

The class *consists* of twenty girls and five boys.

The government *wants* to launch an anti-smoking campaign.

24.8 Câu hỏi với who và what dùng với động từ số ít:

Who *wants* tea? – We all do, please.

What *has* happened? – Several things have happened.

Câu hỏi với *which of* có thể đi với động từ số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy trường hợp:

Which of you *wants* to go? (Which one?)

Which of you *want* to go? (Which ones?)

24.9 Một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều sau đây kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:

goods (hàng hóa)

belongings (vật mang theo)

clothes (quần áo)

earnings (tiền kiếm được)

outskirts (ngoại ô)

particulars (chi tiết)

premises (cơ sở)

troops (binh lính)

remains (hài cốt)

surroundings (vùng xung quanh)

The goods *were* sent from a foreign company.

His belongings *were* stolen at night.

24.10 Tên các môn học tận cùng bằng -ics và một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều thường kết hợp với động từ số ít:

economics (kinh tế học)

gymnastics (thể dục dụng cụ)

maths (toán)

politics (chính trị)

physics (vật lý)

athletics (điền kinh, thể thao)

measles (bệnh sởi)

diabetes (bệnh đái đường)

news (tin tức)

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng sai hình thức động từ do ảnh hưởng bởi hình thức số nhiều của chủ từ:

*The Netherlands *are* a member of the European Union.

[Phải dùng *is* thay cho *are*]

**Star Wars* *are* a very successful film.

[Phải dùng *is* thay cho *are*]

- Dùng sai hình thức động từ do bị ảnh hưởng bởi nghĩa số nhiều của chủ từ:

*The guest of honour, along with his wife and two sons, *were* seated at the first table.

[Phải dùng *was* thay cho *were*]

*Everyone *have to* take off their shoes.

[Phải dùng *has to* thay cho *have to*]

- Dùng sai hình thức động từ do không nắm vững quy luật riêng của chúng:

*The number of letters we receive *are* increasing.

[Phải dùng *is* thay cho *are* sau *the number of*]

*A number of letters we received *is* missing.

[Phải dùng *are* thay cho *is* sau *a number of*]

TEST 24.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

951. A large number of students in this school _____ English quite fluently.

A. speaks

B. is speaking

C. has spoken

D. speak

952. A series of lectures _____ being presented at the Central Hall this week.

A. are

B. will be

C. has become

D. is

953. Beauty as well as health _____ failed her this term.
A. has B. have
C. is D. are
954. Bread and butter _____ what she asks for.
A. is B. are
C. will be D. have been
955. Each student _____ answered the first three questions.
A. has B. have
C. have to D. must
956. Either John or his wife _____ breakfast each morning.
A. make B. is making
C. makes D. made
957. Everybody who _____ a fever must go home at once.
A. has B. have
C. is having D. are having
958. Five dollars _____ all I have on me.
A. are B. is
C. will be D. have
959. John, along with twenty friends, _____ planning a party.
A. are B. is
C. has been D. have been
960. Mathematics _____ the science of quantity.
A. was B. are
C. is D. were
961. Measles _____ cured without much difficulty nowadays.
A. is B. are
C. will be D. have
962. Neither Mary nor her brothers _____ a consent form for tomorrow's field trip.
A. need B. needs
C. is needing D. has need
963. Peter, together with his uncle, _____ fishing.
A. have gone B. has gone
C. go D. goes
964. The army _____ eliminated this section of the training test.
A. has B. is having
C. are D. have
965. The number of the months in a year _____ twelve.
A. was B. were
C. are D. is

966. The picture of the soldiers _____ back many memories.
A. will bring B. brings
C. bring D. have brought
967. These pictures, as well as the photograph _____ the room.
A. brightens B. brightening
C. brighten D. being brightened
968. The quality of these recordings _____ not very good.
A. is B. are
C. is being D. has been
969. This house as well as that one _____ for sale, which will you have?
A. are B. is
C. have D. has
970. To what place _____ either the man or his son wish to go?
A. is B. does
C. do D. are
971. Twenty miles _____ a long way to walk.
A. are B. was
C. is D. were
972. What he told you _____ to be of no importance.
A. seems B. seem
C. must seem D. have seemed
973. Mathematics _____ not always an exact science.
A. was B. are
C. is D. were
974. Mr. John, accompanied by several members of the committee, _____ proposed some changes of the rules.
A. have B. has
C. are D. is
975. The flock of birds _____ circling overhead.
A. gets B. are
C. is D. get
976. The levels of intoxication _____ from subject to subject.
A. has been varied B. have been varied
C. varies D. vary
977. The majority of the students _____ him to be innocent.
A. was made B. believe
C. makes D. make

978. The pair of the pliers _____ on the table.

A. was

B. were

C. put

D. puts

979. The use of credit cards in place of cash _____ increased rapidly in recent years.

A. have been

B. has been

C. has

D. have

980. Advertisements on television _____ becoming more competitive than ever before.

A. has

B. have

C. are

D. is

25. INVERTED SENTENCES

(Câu đảo)

Khi cần nhấn mạnh một thành phần nào đó trong câu, chúng ta thường đặt thành phần đó ở đầu câu. Các thành phần cần nhấn mạnh thường là các phó từ phủ định (negative adverbs), phó từ chỉ nơi chốn (adverbs of place), các từ như *so* và *only*.

25.1 Câu đảo với phó từ phủ định (not, seldom, scarcely, never ...):

- The president did not only come to the meeting but he stayed for two hours.
Not only did the president come to the meeting *but* he stayed for two hours.
[Không những...]
- People have not been so interested in health foods until recently.
Not until recently *have* people been so interested in health foods.
[Cho mãi đến...]
- He was not on time once.
Not once was he on time.
- I have seldom heard such beautiful music.
Seldom have I heard such beautiful music.
- She had no sooner agreed to marry him than she began to have serious doubts.
No sooner had she agreed to marry him *than* she began to have serious doubts.
[Vừa mới...thì...]
- I had hardly arrived when I had a new problem to cope with.
Hardly had I arrived *when* I had a new problem to cope with.
[Vừa mới...thì...]
- We had scarcely started lunch when the doorbell rang.
Scarcely had we started lunch *when* the doorbell rang. [Vừa mới...thì...]
- I had rarely seen such a terrible thing.
Rarely had I seen such a terrible thing.
- We *have never* heard such an interesting story.
Never have we heard such an interesting story.
- Customers' money *cannot* be refunded *under any circumstances*.
Under no circumstances can customers' money be refunded.
[không... ở bất kì trường hợp nào]

- Visitors are not allowed to feed the animals on any account.
On no account are visitors allowed to feed the animals. [dù với bất kì lí do nào]

25.2 Câu đảo với phó từ chỉ nơi chốn, thứ tự và phương hướng:

- A statue is in front of the museum.
In front of the museum is a statue.
- A beautiful castle stands on the hillside.
On the hillside *stands* a beautiful castle.
- A half-conscious man was lying under the table.
Under the table *was lying* a half-conscious man.
- The rain poured down for three days.
Down poured the rain for three days.
- A police car came first, then an ambulance came next.
First came a police car, *then came* an ambulance.

25.3 Câu đảo với *only*:

(i) Câu đảo có một mệnh đề:

- You should use this exit only in an emergency.
Only in an emergency *should* you use this exit.
- You can learn only by asking questions.
Only by asking questions *can* you learn.
- I began to see the result of my work only after a year.
Only after a year *did* I begin to see the result of my work.
- She returned from abroad only recently.
Only recently did she return from abroad.
- Tourists can buy tickets only two days before the opening of the show.
Only two days before the opening of the show *can* tourists buy tickets.

(ii) Câu đảo có nhiều mệnh đề; mệnh đề phụ với *only* được đặt ở đầu câu:

- You should call the doctor at home only if you have a serious problem.
Only if you have a serious problem *should* you call the doctor at home.
- The food should be stored for later consumption only after it has been dried or canned.
Only after the food has been dried or canned *should* it be stored for later consumption.

- The sale is considered final only when you are satisfied.
Only when you are satisfied is the sale considered final.

25.4 Câu đảo với *so + adj/participle*:

- This coin is so rare that it belongs in a museum.
So rare is this coin that it belongs in a museum.
- The map was so confusing that we had to ask a police officer for directions.
So confusing was the map that we had to ask a police officer for directions.
- The wind was so strong that the trees in the National Park were uprooted.
So strong was the wind that the trees in the National Park were uprooted.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Câu đảo thiếu trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs):

**Not only the president came to the meeting but he also stayed for two hours.*
[Phải viết: *Not only did the president come to the meeting but he...*]

- Động từ hoặc trợ động từ không ở đúng vị trí:

**Rarely we had seen a man look so unhappy.*
[Phải viết: *Rarely had we seen a man look so unhappy.*]
**On the hillside a beautiful castle stands.*
[Phải viết: *On the hillside stands a beautiful castle.*]

- Đảo câu khi không thể đảo được:

**Outside the house are talking two men.*
[Chỉ có thể đảo câu với *come, go, sit, lie, stand*. Do đó chỉ có thể viết:
Outside the house two men are talking.]

TEST 25.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

981. Not only _____
A. he refused to help me but he also made fun of me
B. did he refuse to help me but he made fun of me also
C. did he refuse to help me but he also made fun of me
D. he did refuse to help me but also made fun of me
982. _____ had she opened the cupboard door than she stood in front of it petrified.
A. No sooner
B. As soon as
C. Hardly
D. The fact
983. _____ with enough life-boats she wouldn't have caused so heavy casualties.
A. Were the Titanic to be equipped
B. The Titanic were to be equipped
C. The Titanic was to be equipped
D. Had the Titanic been equipped
984. It was not until the doctors asked him to comment on his death _____
recognized their craziness.
A. when he
B. and he
C. that he
D. he
985. George would certainly have attended the meeting _____.
A. if he didn't get a flat tire
B. if the flat tire hadn't happened
C. had he not had a flat tire
D. had the tire not flattened itself
986. _____ received law degrees as today.
A. Never so many women have
B. Never have so many women
C. The women aren't ever
D. Women who have never
987. _____ during his dinner with us.
A. Not did my grandfather say a single word
B. Not said a single word did my grandfather
C. Not my grandfather said a single word
D. Not a single word did my grandfather say
988. There is no water on the moon, nor _____ an atmosphere around it.
A. there is
B. it is
C. there is not
D. is there
989. _____ the work when his wife came in with two policemen.
A. Hardly he had finished
B. Had hardly he finished
C. Had he hardly finished
D. Hardly had he finished

990. Not until the first land plants developed _____.
- A. land animals appeared B. did land animals appear
C. would land animals appear D. the land animals appeared
991. Not only _____ in the field of psychology but animal behavior is examined as well.
- A. is studied human behavior B. is human behavior studied
C. did human behavior study D. human behavior studied
992. It was not until she had arrived home _____ remembered her appointment with the doctor.
- A. when she B. that she
C. and she D. she
993. Not until a student has mastered algebra _____ the principles of geometry, trigonometry, and physics.
- A. he can begin to understand B. can he begin to understand
C. he begins to understand D. that he can begin to understand
994. _____ they go to the theatre.
- A. Only on rare occasions B. Only on rare occasions do
C. On rare occasions only D. Only do on rare occasions
995. _____ pleased with himself.
- A. Only after John received the first prize was he
B. Only after John received the first prize he was
C. After John received the first prize only was he
D. After John received the first prize only he was
996. _____ the lights went out.
- A. Hardly had the performance begun when
B. Hardly the performance had begun when did
C. Hardly had the performance begun than
D. Hardly the performance had begun than did
997. _____ visited her.
- A. Had I known she was sick, I would have
B. No sooner had I known she was sick, I would have
C. No sooner had I known she was sick than I
D. Hardly had I known she was sick when I
998. _____ I would give a party.
- A. Were she to come next month B. She were to come next month
C. She comes next month D. She would come next month.

1007. Not until _____.

- A. I approached the flat did I realise that it was completely empty
- B. did I approach the flat that I realised it was completely empty
- C. I approached the flat that I realised completely was it empty
- D. did I approach the flat I realised that it was completely empty

1008. _____ most of the soldiers gave up!

- A. So was the exercise difficult that
- B. So difficult was the exercise that
- C. So was the exercise difficult that did
- D. So difficult was the exercise that did

1009. _____ be impolite to our parents.

- A. Not in any circumstances should we
- B. In any circumstances shouldn't we
- C. In no circumstances should we
- D. No circumstances permit us to

1010. _____ send the telegram.

- A. No sooner the train should be delayed shall I
- B. No sooner should the train be delayed than shall I
- C. Should the train be delayed, I shall
- D. Should the train is delayed shall I

26. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

(Câu điều kiện)

26.1 Mệnh đề với If (If-clause)

- **Thì kết hợp với thời gian** ➔ hành động có thể xảy ra (likely to happen, probability of fulfillment) (Ví dụ: *Simple Past* đi với *quá khứ*)
- **Thì không kết hợp với thời gian** ➔ hành động không thể xảy ra (unlikely to happen, improbability of fulfillment) (Ví dụ: *Simple Past* đi với *hiện tại* hoặc *Past Perfect* đi với *quá khứ*)

Thì kết hợp với thời gian khi:

THÌ		THỜI GIAN
Simple Present Present Continuous	<i>kết hợp với</i>	Hiện tại hoặc tương lai
Simple Past Past Continuous Present Perfect Present Perfect Continuous	<i>kết hợp với</i>	Quá khứ
Past Perfect	<i>kết hợp với</i>	Ø

If Mary goes dancing tonight.... [Simple Present + thời gian tương lai]

If Mary went dancing last night... [Simple Past + thời gian quá khứ]

Thì được gọi là **không** kết hợp với thời gian trong những trường hợp ngược lại, ví dụ: *Simple Past* hoặc *Past Perfect* dùng với thời gian tương lai hoặc quá khứ.

If Mary went dancing tonight.... [Simple Past + thời gian tương lai]

If Mary had gone dancing last night... [Past Perfect + thời gian quá khứ]

26.2 Mệnh đề kết quả (Result clause)

- Hành động có thể xảy ra ➔ chọn các trợ động từ *shall, will, may, can, must, ought to* cho mệnh đề kết quả:

If Mary went dancing last night, she *will/may/can*...

- Hành động không thể xảy ra ➔ chọn các trợ động từ *should, would, might, could, ought to* cho mệnh đề kết quả:

If Mary had gone dancing last night, she *would/might/could*...

Ngoài ra, đối với hình thức động từ đứng sau các trợ động từ:

- Dùng động từ nguyên mẫu đơn (simple infinitive) (go, work...) để diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra.

If Mary went dancing last night, she *will have* an early night tonight.

If Mary had gone dancing last night, she *would have* an early night tonight.

- Dùng động từ nguyên mẫu tiếp diễn (present infinitive) (be going, be working...) để diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra.

If Mary went dancing last night, she *may still be lying* in bed now.

If Mary had gone dancing last night, she *might still be lying* in bed now.

- Dùng động từ nguyên mẫu hoàn thành (perfect infinitive) (have gone, have worked...) để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra.

If Mary went dancing last night, she *must have gone* to bed very late.

If Mary had gone dancing last night, she *might have gone* to bed very late.

NHỮNG LỖI THƯỜNG PHẠM

- Dùng hình thức động từ nguyên mẫu không đúng:

*If Tom's car broke down yesterday, he *must go* to school on foot now.

[Phải dùng *be going* thay cho *go* để diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra ở hiện tại]

- Dùng thì không đúng:

*Why didn't you say that you *were* short of money? If I *knew* I *would* lend you some.

[Phải dùng *had known* và *would have lent* để diễn tả hành động không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ]

TEST 26.1

Chọn phương án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để hoàn thành mỗi câu sau:

1011. "Can I borrow your car for this evening?" — "Sure. If Lora _____ it back in time, you're welcome to borrow it."
A. brought B. brings
C. will bring D. would bring
1012. I would go swimming if the weather _____ better.
A. is B. will be
C. would be D. were
1013. I would not have read your diary if you _____ it in such an obvious place.
A. didn't hide B. hadn't hidden
C. don't hide D. won't hide
1014. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I _____ so much noise when I came in.
A. don't make B. didn't make
C. wouldn't have made D. won't make
1015. I _____ William with me if I had known you didn't get along with him.
A. hadn't brought B. didn't bring
C. wouldn't have brought D. won't bring
1016. I _____ you if I need your help.
A. would call B. will call
C. called D. call
1017. I _____ you sooner had someone told me you were in hospital.
A. visited B. visit
C. would have visited D. had visited
1018. If energy _____ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.
A. is B. were
C. will be D. would be
1019. If he _____ time tomorrow, we will meet the day after.
A. didn't have B. won't have
C. wouldn't have D. doesn't have
1020. If I could speak Spanish, I _____ next year studying in Mexico.
A. will spend B. had spent
C. would spend D. would have spent

1021. A huge tree crashed through the roof and broke my bed. _____ in the room, I would have been killed.
- A. Should I be
B. Had I been
C. Would I be
D. Would I have been
1022. A nation's balance of trade is considered unfavourable if it _____ more money on imports than it gains from exports.
- A. will spend
B. would spend
C. can spend
D. spends
1023. _____ any problem with the product, contact our local dealer.
- A. Do you have
B. Should you have
C. Had you
D. You have
1024. Do you think there should be less conflict in the world if all people _____ the same language?
- A. speak
B. spoke
C. will speak
D. had spoken
1025. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I _____ it.
- A. don't believe
B. can't believe
C. would never have believed
D. hadn't believe
1026. "Here's my phone number. " — "Thanks. I'll give you a call if I _____ some help tomorrow."
- A. will need
B. need
C. needed
D. would need
1027. I didn't get home until after midnight last night. Otherwise, I _____ your call.
- A. returned
B. had returned
C. would return
D. would have returned
1028. If I didn't have a mobile phone, my life _____ complete.
- A. wouldn't be
B. won't be
C. isn't
D. wasn't
1029. If I found Rob's phone number now, I _____ him about the change in plans.
- A. called
B. had called
C. could call
D. will call
1030. If I _____ the same problems you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
- A. had had
B. have
C. would have
D. should have

1031. If I weren't working for an accounting firm, I _____ in a bank.
 A. work B. will work
 C. have worked D. would be working
1032. If my candidate had won the election, I _____ happy now.
 A. am B. was
 C. would be D. can be
1033. If we don't order the tickets soon, there _____ any tickets left.
 A. wouldn't be B. won't be
 C. aren't D. weren't
1034. The lecturer didn't know what he was talking about, but if Dr Mason _____ I would have listened carefully.
 A. lectured B. was lecturing
 C. would lecture D. had been lecturing
1035. If the ground hadn't been so soft my horse _____ instead of coming in second. He never does very well on soft ground.
 A. could have won B. might have won
 C. must have won D. would have won
1036. She was sent to prison only because she refused to pay the fine. If she had paid the fine she _____ to prison.
 A. wouldn't have sent B. wouldn't have been sent
 C. wouldn't be sent D. wouldn't have to be sent
1037. If Tom's car broke down yesterday, he must _____ to school on foot now.
 A. go B. went
 C. be going D. have gone
1038. She must have loved him very much because she waited for him for fifteen years. If she _____ him she _____ so long.
 A. doesn't love; won't wait
 B. didn't love; wouldn't wait
 C. didn't love; wouldn't have waited
 D. hadn't loved; wouldn't have waited
1039. The burglar made quite a lot of noise getting into the house; but fortunately for him the family were watching a noisy TV play. If they _____ cards they would certainly have heard him.
 A. had been playing B. had played
 C. were playing D. played

1040. A university degree is a useful thing. If I had a university degree, I _____ in a comfortable office instead of standing at a street corner selling newspapers.

- A. will now sit
- B. will now be sitting
- C. would now be sitting
- D. would now sit

ASSIGNMENT 3

PART A

Choose the one word or phrase that best completes the sentence.

1. Not only _____ among the largest animals that ever lived, but they are also among the most intelligent.
A. are whales
B. some whales are
C. whales are
D. they are whales
2. The club secretary is useless. He never tells anybody anything. We _____ about this meeting if the chairman had not told us.
A. will not know
B. would have not known
C. would not know
D. would not have known
3. If only we _____ a washing machine! I'm tired of queuing outside the launderette every day.
A. have
B. would have
C. had
D. had had
4. Ann usually does the shopping, but I _____ it today as she isn't well.
A. do
B. have done
C. am doing
D. had done
5. I have forgotten the address of that company. I _____ it down.
A. should have written
B. were to write
C. must have written
D. could have written
6. Mr Cook _____ as a computer programmer for 20 years. Then he retired and went to live in Florida.
A. works
B. worked
C. has worked
D. was working
7. Look at all the broken glass. There _____ a bad accident here.
A. must be
B. should be
C. must have been
D. should have been
8. Professional people expect _____ when it is necessary to cancel an appointment.
A. you to call them
B. your calling them
C. that you would call them
D. that you are calling them

9. It is important that the TOEFL office _____ an applicant's registration.
A. will confirm B. must confirm
C. confirms D. confirm
10. Not until a monkey is several years old _____ to exhibit signs of independence from its mother.
A. it begins B. and begin
C. does it begin D. beginning
11. My friend John _____ for two weeks. He is trying to give it up.
A. does not smoke B. is not smoking
C. did not smoke D. has not smoked
12. The examiner made us _____ our identification in order to be admitted to the test center.
A. showing B. showed
C. show D. to show
13. So complicated _____ that consumers who use a product are seldom aware of where all its components come from.
A. today trade is international B. is international trade today
C. today international trade is D. international trade today
14. Alexander Fleming, _____, received the Nobel Prize in 1945.
A. who discovered penicillin B. he discovered penicillin
C. discovering penicillin D. that discovered penicillin
15. It looked dark and heavy _____ it was going to rain.
A. although B. as if
C. unless D. whereas
16. Ernest Hemingway, a novelist and short-story writer, developed a prose style _____.
A. who influenced an entire generation of authors
B. influenced an entire generation of authors
C. that influenced an entire generation of authors
D. has influenced an entire generation of authors
17. _____ the cities do not provide better and cheaper mass transportation, the traffic problem will get worse.
A. So that B. If
C. Even though D. Before
18. _____ riding a bicycle is good exercise, it does not use up a lot of calories.
A. As B. Because
C. Although D. So that

19. She turned off the cassette player _____ she could study.
A. now that
B. so that
C. even if
D. in case
20. Dry cleaning is the process _____ clothes are cleaned in liquids other than water.
A. by
B. by which
C. which
D. that
21. Sand dunes are made of loose sand _____ up by the action of the wind.
A. it builds
B. building
C. that builds
D. built
22. _____ imaginative stories about the origin of the game of chess.
A. Many of the
B. There are many
C. Many
D. Of the many
23. _____ are hot is a common misconception.
A. All deserts
B. Of all deserts
C. All deserts which
D. That all deserts
24. _____, which was purchased from Russia in 1867, is the largest state in the U.S.
A. Alaska
B. It is Alaska
C. That Alaska
D. Alaska is that
25. Job specialization takes place _____ of production is separated into occupations.
A. whenever the work is
B. whenever working
C. when the work
D. is when the work
26. One of the most powerful optical telescopes, the "Big Eye" at Mt. Palomar, _____ a 200-inch mirror.
A. has
B. with
C. that has
D. which
27. When my lost briefcase was returned, I felt relieved. It was as if a huge weight _____ from my shoulders.
A. is lifted
B. has been lifted
C. had been lifted
D. would be lifted
28. No one knows what colour dinosaurs were _____ no sample of their skin has survived.
A. because
B. on account of
C. because of
D. due to
29. _____, the eggs of most birds must be kept warm.
A. By properly developing
B. Proper development
C. Developing properly
D. To develop properly

30. Culture influences the way _____.
A. viewing the world B. of the world view
C. that we view the world D. in the view of the world

PART B

Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct.

31. Never before has so many people in the world been interested in soccer.
A B C D
32. It is essential that cancer is diagnosed and treated as early as possible in order
A B C
to assure a successful cure.
D
33. The students' knowledge of foreign languages and international relations aid
A B C
them in their work.
D
34. The law requires that every citizen registers before voting in an election.
A B C D
35. It is believed that, by the year 2010, a space station will be constructed between
A B C D
Mars and the Earth.
36. Some teachers argue that students who used to using a calculator may forget
A B C
how to do mental calculations.
D
37. Since the shipment of supplies for our experiments were delayed, we will have to
A B C D
reschedule our work.
38. I wonder if anything has happened to Tom. I waited an hour now.
A B C D
39. When Linda first came to this house, it was a very quiet area. But since then a
A B C

new housing estate was built.

D

40. They still say that if Mc Conroy had gone into the greengrocery business

A

B

when he left school he would have been rich now instead of being poor.

C

D

41. After spending two days argue about where to go for their holidays, they

A

B

C

decided not to go anywhere.

D

42. The ambassador, with his family and staff, invite you to a reception at the

A

B

C

embassy on Tuesday afternoon at five o'clock.

D

43. Before trains were invented people used to travelling on horseback or in

A

B

C

D

stagecoaches.

44. Everyone who has traveled across the United States by car, train, or bus are

A

B

surprised to see such a large expanse of territory with such variation among the

C

D

life-styles of the people.

45. The director suggested to call a meeting and let the workers decide the matters

A

B

C

themselves.

D

46. Rafts which made from the trunks of trees may have been the earliest vehicles.

A

B

C

D

47. The tips of high-speed dental drills are done of tungsten steel and often contain

A

B

C

D

diamonds.

48. The oceans, that cover two-thirds of the Earth's surface, are the object of study

A

B

C

D

for oceanographers.

49. During a total eclipse of the Sun the Earth moving into the shadow of the Moon.
A B C D
50. I read a number of articles, most of them were very useful.
A B C D
51. That the thought of playing against them arouses all my aggressive instincts.
A B C D
52. Marie Curie did a great contribution to science through her discovery of
A B C
radium, although it proved fatal to her.
D
53. Most observatories contain telescopes that scientists using as cameras to take
A B C D
photographs of remote galaxies.
54. Not until the late Middle Ages glass became a major construction material.
A B C D
55. The campsite is located at the edge of the stream has an advantage over the
A B C D
last one.
56. To head the new department, the President selected a man whom had been
A B C D
very successful in management.
57. The job may be finished by anyone feels he has the strength that it takes.
A B C D
58. Many universities receive grants to make research for the central government.
A B C D
59. They picked up five boat-loads of refugees, some of them had been at sea for
A B C D
two months.
60. That man has brought us nothing but trouble. I wish I have never set eyes on him.
A B C D

ANSWER KEY

1. TENSES

TEST 1.1

1. D. Hành động đã xảy ra kéo dài và trước hành động "said". Chú ý cách dùng với "since".
2. B. Chú ý cách dùng Present Perfect với "not...yet". (Xem 1.7.)
3. D. Liên hệ cách dùng 1.4c.
4. B. Mặc dù không có phó từ chỉ quá khứ nhưng thời gian chỉ quá khứ đã được chỉ rõ với "after the accident". Chú ý cách dùng "have + O + Past participle". (Xem 6.3.)
5. A. Các hành động quá khứ kế tiếp nhau phải được dùng với Past Simple.
6. D. Tuy "check" diễn tả hành động diễn ra trong tương lai, trước một hành động trong tương lai khác – "be given" – chúng ta không được dùng các thì tương lai vì "after you..." là mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (phải dùng Present Perfect thay thế).
7. B. Hành động diễn tả bởi "his father (be) before him" xảy ra trước nên phải dùng với Past Perfect.
8. A. Hành động "told" diễn ra trước "leaving" phải được dùng với Past perfect. Hành động "work" xảy ra trong tương lai nhưng do mối quan hệ về thì phải dùng "would work" thay cho "will work".
9. C. Hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ.
10. C. Hành động xảy ra trước một thời điểm trong tương lai phải dùng với Future Perfect. Chú ý: "by" = "before".
11. A. Hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác (finish) trong tương lai.
12. A. Câu hỏi gián tiếp sau "how", "what", "when"... không cần đặt trợ động từ trước chủ từ.
13. A. Khi câu hỏi dùng Simple Past, thời gian trở thành xác định.
14. C. B sai vì "own" không thể kết hợp với thì tiếp diễn.
15. B. C sai vì động từ "start" thường không dùng với thì tiếp diễn.
16. D. Xem 1.4b.
17. D. "for ages and ages" diễn tả hành động kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại. (Xem 1.6c.)
18. B. "To be to + V" diễn tả hành động sẽ diễn ra trong tương lai.
19. A. Hành động với "since" (= từ đó đến nay) thường dùng với Present Perfect.
20. B. Không dùng Present Perfect vì thời gian đã trở thành xác định với mệnh đề trước (He was tired).
21. B. Hành động xảy ra trước "kept looking & wondering".
22. B. As (= trong khi, khi).
23. B. Hành động xảy ra kéo dài và trước "retired".
24. B. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
25. D. Hình thức "was going to + V" diễn tả một dự định trong quá khứ nhưng không được thực hiện.
26. A. Hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ và kéo dài đến hiện tại (xem 1.6c). Chú ý "since then" (= từ đó đến nay)
27. A. Có thể dùng Past Perfect (had you had) nhưng ở đây không cần thiết vì đã có "before" khiến mối quan hệ trước sau đã trở nên rõ ràng.
28. B. Hàm ý "Đã bao lâu cho đến nay".

29. C. Chú ý "by" = "before".

30. A. Dùng Past Simple vì thời gian đã trở nên xác định với mệnh đề "when that car..."

TEST 1.2

31. A. Dự định trong tương lai gần với "be + present participle". Cách dùng này phải có phó từ chỉ thời gian (tomorrow...) đi kèm.
32. D. Thì Present Perfect Continuous nhấn mạnh sự liên tục của hành động từ quá khứ đến hiện tại.
33. B. "Some days before" = "some days ago".
34. B. Chú ý cách dùng Present Perfect với "not... yet". (Xem 1.7.)
35. C. A và D sai vì các thì tương lai không thể dùng với mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian "until mother...".
36. C. Dùng Present Perfect để diễn tả một hành động đã hoàn tất ("đã tìm kiếm khắp nơi rồi").
37. B. Dùng Future Perfect Continuous để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra kéo dài đến khi một hành động khác xảy đến ("strikes").
38. D. Dùng Future Perfect để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra kéo dài đến một thời điểm trong tương lai. (Xem 10.1b.)
39. B. Dùng Simple Past vì thời gian được xác định.
40. B. Dùng Present Perfect để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra và kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại với "in the past/last two decades".
41. D. Dùng Past Continuous để diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra vào lúc "the roads were crowded".
42. B.
43. A. Dùng Present Continuous để diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra vào lúc "the sun is very strong".
44. D. Xem cách dùng 1.4.b.
45. A. Hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ, theo sau một sự kiện quá khứ khác ("there was a violent storm").
46. D. Chú ý "remain" không được dùng ở hình thức tiếp diễn hoặc thụ động.
47. B. Dùng Simple Past vì thời gian được xác định.
48. B. Dùng Past Perfect để diễn tả hành động xảy ra trước "returned".
49. A. Dùng Present Perfect để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra và kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại với "since then" (= từ lúc ấy đến nay).
50. C. Đây là cách dùng Present perfect với "not... yet". (Xem 1.7.)
51. B. Thì Present Perfect Continuous nhấn mạnh hành động đã xảy ra và kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại.
52. C. Tương tự câu 51.
53. C. Hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ, trước "15th century".
54. C. Hành động đã xảy ra trước hành động "arrived".
55. B. Hành động đang xảy ra trong quá khứ thì một hành động khác xảy đến. (Xem 1.4b.)
56. A. Không cần thiết phải dùng Past Perfect Continuous. (Xem 1.4b.)
57. A. B sai vì cần nhấn mạnh "forgot" đã xảy ra trước hành động kia.
58. D. Dùng Past Perfect để diễn tả hành động "never won" đã xảy ra trước "last season".
59. B.

60. A. Thì Present Perfect Continuous nhấn mạnh hành động đã xảy ra và kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại.

TEST 1.3

61. A. Chủ ý "the day before" cho thấy rằng hành động "go" đã xảy ra trước.
62. D. Thì Present Perfect Continuous nhấn mạnh hành động đã xảy ra và kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại.
63. D. Cần nhớ mẫu câu "There + be + S + present participle".
64. B. Diễn tả sự kiện vẫn tồn tại ở hiện tại (facts that are true at the moment of speaking). C sai vì không hòa hợp với chủ từ "existence".
65. D. Sự kiện không xác định thời gian.
66. A. Các động từ chỉ hoạt động ở trạng thái tĩnh như "sit", "stand", "lie"... thường được theo sau bởi một present participle để diễn tả hai hoạt động diễn ra đồng thời: "We sat talking for half an hour.", "He stood in the garden waiting for her."...
67. A. Sau "This is the first, second, ...", chúng ta phải dùng thì Present Perfect.
68. C. Hành động đang diễn ra vào một thời điểm hoặc hành động khác trong tương lai. Liên hệ 1.4c.
69. D. Thời gian quá khứ được xác định với "ago".
70. A. "used to" (= đã thường), chỉ thói quen trong quá khứ nay không còn nữa. So sánh với "is/are used to" (= quen thuộc với). Xem thêm chương 4.
71. A. Thì Past Simple vì thời gian đã được xác định ("the day before yesterday").
72. C. Tương tự câu trên.
73. D. Thời gian quá khứ được xác định nhờ câu đi trước.
74. B. C sai vì thì Past Perfect không thể kết hợp với Present Simple trong mệnh đề đi trước "I can't remember".
75. D. Hành động "waiting" phải xảy ra trước "were annoyed".
76. D. Tương tự câu 63.
77. A. Hành động đã hoàn tất trong quá khứ, thời gian không xác định.
78. D. C sai vì có thể hiểu nhầm là lời mời ("will you...?"). A không diễn tả ý định rõ như D.
79. A. Chủ ý "By the end".
80. A. Hành động theo sau một hành động quá khứ khác.
81. A. Hai hành động diễn ra song song với liên từ "while".
82. C. Phải dùng Present Simple vì không thể dùng thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian "when the teacher...".
83. B. Tương tự câu 62. "four years today" = "four years from today".
84. B. Thì Present Perfect diễn tả kết quả ở hiện tại (present result): "Now he has collected so many...".
85. B.
86. C. Thời gian kéo dài từ quá khứ đến hiện tại; hành động ở mệnh đề đầu được nhấn mạnh.
87. B. "Up to then" (= cho đến lúc đó).
88. A. Hành động đã xảy ra và kết thúc trước "got to the theatre".
89. B. "be going to + V" diễn tả hành động *chắc* sẽ diễn ra trong tương lai (future with certainty).

90. C. "be going to + V" diễn tả ý định đã được trù tính từ trước của người nói (future with intention). B sai vì *will* chỉ diễn tả ý định mà thôi.

TEST 1.4

91. D. Thời gian 10 năm đã qua.
92. D.
93. B. Chú ý đây là câu hỏi gián tiếp với "whether", không cần các trợ động từ đi trước.
94. C. Thời gian trở nên xác định nhờ mệnh đề đi trước "When asked...".
95. B.
96. C. Đây là một Participle phrase đã được rút gọn từ "Most of the people who were interviewed".
97. C.
98. A. Hành động "do business" xảy ra trước "said".

TEST 1:5

99. A. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
100. B. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
101. A. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
102. B. Sự kiện ở hiện tại.
103. C. Sự kiện ở hiện tại.
104. D. Liên hệ cách dùng 1.7.
105. A. Chú ý vị trí động từ sau giới từ "after" phải ở hình thức *-ing*.
106. D.
107. B. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
108. A. Lí do tương tự câu 105.

TEST 1.6

109. B. Hành động vừa mới xảy ra. (Xem 1.8.)
110. A. Chúng ta có thể dùng Simple Past sau khi Present Perfect đã được dùng trong câu trước.
111. A. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
112. B. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
113. C. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
114. D.
115. B. Hành động kế tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.
116. A. Liên hệ cách dùng 1.7 với "already".
117. B. Liên hệ cách dùng 1.7 với "not yet".
118. A. Chú ý thì Past Simple diễn tả sự kéo dài nhưng đã chấm dứt trong quá khứ.
119. B. Phải dùng Present Simple để diễn tả sự kiện vẫn đúng ở hiện tại (facts that are true at the moment of speaking). C và D sai vì "like" không được dùng ở hình thức tiếp diễn.
120. D. Chú ý lỗi viết thông dụng ở cuối thư "I am looking forward to + gerund" (=Tôi đang mong đợi ...).

TEST 1.7

- 121. C. Liên hệ cách dùng 1.10.
- 122. C. Hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.
- 123. A. Hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.
- 124. D. Hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.
- 125. A. Chú ý thì Future Simple được dùng thay thế Future Perfect trong trường hợp này.
- 126. A. Hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.
- 127. C. Hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.
- 128. B. Chú ý cách dùng thì Future Continuous để diễn tả hành động trong tương lai không phụ thuộc vào ý định (a future action without intention), bao hàm những hành động sẽ xảy ra theo trình tự tự nhiên.
- 129. A. Li do tương tự câu trên.
- 130. B. Hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

TEST 1.8

- 131. C. Đây là mệnh đề được rút gọn (reduced clause) từ "... a recent survey (which was) conducted by...".
- 132. D. Thời gian được xác định qua "in a recent survey".
- 133. B. Chú ý "it" là impersonal pronoun. "It was found that..." (= Người ta tìm ra rằng...).
- 134. C. Mẫu câu "to ask sb to do sth".
- 135. A.
- 136. D. Chú ý động từ "be" ở đây bị chi phối trong mối quan hệ về thì với động từ quá khứ "said" đi trước.
- 137. D. Mẫu câu "to suggest doing sth".
- 138. C. Chú ý động từ "be" ở đây bị chi phối trong mối quan hệ về thì với động từ quá khứ "didn't know" đi trước.

TEST 1.9

- 139. B. A và C sai vì chúng ta không thể dùng các động từ nguyên mẫu trong trường hợp này.
- 140. D. Hành động đã xảy ra trước "started".
- 141. C. Chú ý cụm từ "by the time".
- 142. B. Phải dùng gerund (danh động từ) sau giới từ.
- 143. C. "So had Lindlaw." = "Lindlaw had gone bankrupt, too."
- 144. B.
- 145. D. Dùng Present Simple để diễn tả sự thật tổng quát (general truth).
- 146. B. Thì Present Perfect diễn tả kết quả ở hiện tại (present result). Xem thêm câu 84.
- 147. A. Hành động đã xảy ra trước "said".
- 148. A. Hành động đã xảy ra trước "started".

2. VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

TEST 2.1

149. C. To spend some time doing sth.
150. A. Sau "feel + O", chúng ta có thể dùng bare infinitive (crawl) hoặc khi cần nhấn mạnh hành động đang diễn ra, dùng present participle (crawling).
151. D. To mean to do sth (= có ý định làm gì): I didn't mean to hurt you. To mean doing sth (= có nghĩa là gì): Love means never having to say "I am sorry".
152. C. To be worth doing sth (= đáng làm).
153. C. To permit sb to do sth (= cho phép ai làm gì). Cũng dùng: to permit doing sth ((= cho phép làm gì).
154. C. To dislike doing sth.
155. C. Something to eat = something that she can eat.
156. B. To avoid doing sth (= tránh làm gì).
157. D. To see sb do/doing sth. Trong câu này ta chọn "to see sb do sth" vì ở đây ý cần diễn tả sự kiện tổng quát, không cần nhấn mạnh hành động đang diễn ra.
158. D. There + be + S + V-ing.
159. A.
160. B. To remember doing sth (= nhớ lại, hồi tưởng về một hành động đã qua).
161. A. Had better do sth.
162. A. To regret to do sth (= tiếc khi sắp phải làm một việc gì). To regret doing sth (= tiếc về một việc đã qua).
163. C. To advise sb to do sth (= khuyên ai làm gì).
164. B.
165. C. To suggest doing sth (= đề nghị làm gì) hoặc to suggest that-clause (= đề nghị điều gì). A sai vì không có mẫu động từ "to suggest to do sth".
166. A. To insist on sb doing sth (= đòi ai làm gì).
167. A. To remember to do sth (= nhớ/không quên làm điều gì). B sai vì "remembered filling...." có nghĩa "hồi tưởng lại, nhớ lại...".
168. C. To advise sb to do sth (= khuyên ai làm gì).
169. A. To warn sb to do sth (= cảnh báo ai phải làm gì): His mother warned him to keep away from the dog.
170. B.
171. B. To allow sb to do sth (cho phép ai làm gì).
172. A. To stop doing sth (= ngừng làm gì).
173. D. Khi hai hành động diễn ra đồng thời, động từ thứ hai phải ở hình thức với -ing: John sat in a chair reading a newspaper.
174. C. To have a child to look after = To have a child that you can look after.
175. A. To manage to do sth: tìm được cách để làm gì.
176. C. Chú ý sau "need", chúng ta có thể dùng passive (This room needs to be repainted) hoặc gerund (This room needs repainting).
177. D. To stop to do sth (= ngừng lại để làm gì).
178. C. Would rather do sth (= thích làm gì hơn).

TEST 2.2

179. B. Chọn "to hear sb doing sth" để diễn tả sự việc đang diễn ra.
180. D. To finish doing sth.
181. C. To learn (how) to do sth.
182. B. Can't help doing sth (= không tránh khỏi làm gì).
183. B. Xem thêm câu 151.
184. A. Chú ý quy luật: sau các giới từ (in, on, at, with, by,...), động từ phải ở hình thức tận cùng bằng -ing.
185. B. To refuse to do sth.
186. C.
187. D. To let sb do sth (để cho ai làm gì).
188. B. To remember doing sth (= nhớ lại việc đã qua).
189. C. To regret doing sth (= tiếc về một việc đã qua).
190. A. To forget doing sth (= quên một việc đã qua).
191. B. To forget to do sth (= quên làm một việc gì). Xem ví dụ tại 2.3b.
192. B. To remind sb to do sth (= nhắc ai làm gì).
193. B.
194. C. To resist doing sth (= cưỡng lại làm việc gì).
195. D. To admit doing sth.
196. A. To discuss doing sth.
197. C. Xem câu 184.
198. B. To appear to do sth (= có vẻ như...).
199. D. To intend to do/doing sth (= định làm gì).
200. A. To postpone doing sth (= hoãn làm gì).
201. B.
202. D. To continue to do/doing sth.
203. D. Can't stand to do/doing sth. Xem 2.3a.
204. B. To expect to do sth (= trông đợi làm gì).
205. B.
206. A. Xem câu 187.
207. B. To put off doing sth (= hoãn làm gì).
208. A. To stop doing sth (= ngừng, thôi không làm một việc gì).

3. INFINITIVES & MODAL VERBS

TEST 3.1

209. A
210. A
211. A. Diễn tả sự suy diễn (deduction) → "must be lying" (= hẳn là đang...).
212. C. "could" diễn tả sự xin phép (xem 3.2); "can" diễn tả sự cho phép (xem 3.3).
213. A. "should" diễn tả lời khuyên (xem 3.6).
214. C.
215. B. "can't" diễn tả sự không cho phép (xem 3.2).

216. C. Dùng "might" khi mức độ chắc chắn không cao (xem 3.4).
217. B. "must" (= hẳn là).
218. C. "mustn't" (= không được), xem 3.5.
219. D.
220. D. "should" diễn tả sự khuyên bảo (xem 3.6).
221. B. Dùng "could" khi mức độ chắc chắn không cao (xem 3.4).
222. A. Chú ý "will" trong câu điều kiện diễn tả logic tự nhiên, tất yếu của sự việc.
223. C. Xem câu 217.
224. C. "don't have to" diễn tả sự không cần thiết phải làm một việc gì; B sai vì "must not" hàm nghĩa "không được".
225. A. "mustn't" (= không được), xem 3.5.
226. B.
227. C. "can" được dùng để diễn tả khả năng (xem 3.7).
228. B. Tương tự câu 217.
229. B. "ought to" được dùng để diễn tả sự khuyên bảo nhưng có nghĩa mạnh hơn "should".
230. A.
231. C. "shall", ngoài nghĩa "sẽ", thường được dùng trong lời nói trịnh trọng để diễn tả sự quyết tâm hoặc sự nghiêm túc: "We *shall* defend our country, whatever the cost may be", "Two linesmen *shall* be appointed", "The field of play *shall* be rectangular" v.v... (luật bóng đá).
232. C. Tương tự câu 217.
233. A.
234. B.
235. D. "should" (= lẽ ra là). Ở quá khứ, chúng ta dùng "should + perfect infinitive".
236. A.
237. C. "should" (= nên) diễn tả lời khuyên.
238. B.

TEST 3.2

239. C. Xem 3.10e.
240. B. "Must + perfect infinitive" (= hẳn là đã...).
241. A. Tương tự như câu trên.
242. B. "Should + perfect infinitive" (= đáng lẽ đã phải).
243. B. Đây là dạng V + perfect infinitive. Xem 3.1c.
244. D. Tương tự câu 240.
245. A. "Could + perfect infinitive" (= có thể đã). Xem 3.10c.
246. D. Xem 3.10d.
247. D. Xem 3.10d.
248. A. Xem 3.10g.
249. B. Tương tự câu 242.
250. B. Xem 3.10c.
251. A. Xem 3.10f.
252. B. Tương tự như câu trên.

- 253. A. Tương tự như câu 251.
- 254. D. Xem 3.10e.
- 255. B. Tương tự như câu trên.
- 256. D. Xem 3.10d.
- 257. C. Xem 3.10b.
- 258. C. Xem 3.10a.
- 259. B. Xem 3.10d.
- 260. C. Tương tự như câu trên.
- 261. B. Tương tự như câu 259.
- 262. B. Xem 3.10g.
- 263. A. Xem 3.10b.
- 264. B. Tương tự như câu trên.
- 265. A. Xem 3.10d.
- 266. C. Tương tự câu 245.
- 267. B. Xem 3.10d.
- 268. B. Xem 3.10f.

4. USED TO & BE/GET USED TO

TEST 4.1

- 269. B. Be accustomed to/be used to + gerund (= quen với).
- 270. D. Tương tự như câu trên.
- 271. C. Get used to + gerund được dùng ở đây để chỉ mức độ tăng dần của thói quen theo thời gian.
- 272. A. Used to + V (= đã thường).
- 273. A. Chú ý đây là câu thụ động với động từ "use".
- 274. D. Tương tự câu 269.
- 275. A. Tương tự câu 272.
- 276. A. Chọn A (used to ride) vì câu hàm chỉ một thói quen nay không còn nữa.
- 277. D. Chúng ta cần hiểu rõ nghĩa của những câu như thế này để chọn đáp án đúng.
- 278. A. Tương tự câu 272.
- 279. B. Tương tự câu 272.
- 280. D.
- 281. B. Chú ý đây là câu thụ động với động từ "use".
- 282. C. Tương tự câu 272.
- 283. C. "is used to" + gerund (= quen với việc gì).
- 284. A.
- 285. B.
- 286. C. Tương tự câu 272.
- 287. A.
- 288. B.
- 289. C.
- 290. B. Chú ý đây là câu thụ động với động từ "use".

291. B. "Be used to" có thể được theo ngay sau bằng cụm danh từ.
 292. D. Tương tự câu 272.
 293. C. Tương tự câu 272.
 294. A. Tương tự câu 272.
 295. D. Tương tự câu 272.
 296. A. Tương tự câu 272.
 297. D. "A teacher is used to answering questions" diễn tả hoạt động thường xuyên của thầy giáo (quen với việc trả lời câu hỏi).
 298. B. Tương tự câu 272.

5. GET + PAST PARTICIPLE

TEST 5.1

299. h.
 300. f. "Get" (= become).
 301. b.
 302. j.
 303. i. "Get sunburned" hoặc "sunburnt" (= rám nắng, cháy nắng).
 304. e.
 305. g. "Get well" (= khoẻ mạnh).
 306. d. "Get dressed" (= mặc quần, áo)
 307. a. "Get busy" (= bắt tay vào việc): Let's get busy with the clearing up.
 308. c. "Get dizzy" (= chóng mặt).

TEST 5.2

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 309. a. | 310. d. "To get lost" (= bị lạc đường) |
| 311. f. | 312. c. "To get crowded" (= trở nên đông đúc) |
| 313. b. | 314. e. |
| 315. g. | 316. j. "To get stolen" (= bị mất cắp) |
| 317. h. "To get worried" (= lo lắng) | 318. i. "To get involved in sth" (= can dự vào). |

6. HAVE & GET + O + V

TEST 6.1

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 319. B. "To do the cooking" (= nấu ăn). | 320. B. Xem 6.1. |
| 321. D. "To make sb do sth" (= bảo, buộc ai làm gì). | 322. C. |
| 323. A. | 324. A. Tương tự câu 321. |
| 325. B. "To get the puncture mended"
(= vá lại lỗ thủng). | 326. C. |
| 327. C. | 328. A. |
| 329. C. Xem 6.3 và 6.4. | 330. A. |
| 331. A. To get sb to do sth. | 332. C. |

333. C.
 335. A.
 337. D.
 339. C. Tương tự câu 331.
 341. A.
 343. B.
 345. A.
 347. B. Tương tự câu 331.
334. D.
 336. A.
 338. A.
 340. D.
 342. A.
 344. C.
 346. A.
 348. A. "To get the oil refilled" (= đổ xăng).

7. MAKE & DO

TEST 7.1

349. A.
 350. A. "To have nothing to do" → "to do nothing".
 351. D.
 352. C. To make a dress.
 353. A.
 354. B. Xem các cụm từ thông dụng với "make" tại phần lí thuyết trên.
 355. D.
 356. D. "To make oneself understood" (= làm cho người ta hiểu được ý mình). He can't speak much Chinese but he can make himself understood.
 357. D. "To make a phone call" (= gọi điện thoại).
 358. A. "To make excuses" (= xin lỗi).
 359. A.
 360. A. "To make do with sth" (= làm tạm một cái gì). "To make do with a quick snack" (= ăn vội). "Quick snack" (= bữa ăn nhanh).
 361. B. "To make up one's mind" (= quyết định).
 362. A. "To make provisions for sb" (= sắp đặt, bảo đảm tài chính cho ai).
 363. B. "To make a complaint" (= than phiền).
 364. A.
 365. A. "To do military service" (= thi hành nghĩa vụ quân sự).
 366. C.
 367. C. "To make for home" (= đi về nhà).
 368. A.
 369. A. "To do a course" (= tham dự một khóa học).
 370. B. "To do business with sb" (= giao dịch, mua bán với ai).
 371. A.
 372. A. "To do" = "to study/learn". She's doing chemistry at Sydney University.
 373. A. Xem câu trên.
 374. C.
 375. D. "To make sb/oneself up" (= trang điểm).
 376. C.
 377. D. "To make off with sth" (= ăn cắp rồi bỏ chạy cùng với đồ ăn cắp được).

ASSIGNMENT 1**PART A**

1C	2C	3D	4B	5A
6A	7A	8C	9B	10C
11D	12D	13B	14D	15A
16A	17B	18D	19A	20B
21C	22D	23B	24C	25B
26C	27D	28B	29B	30D

PART B

31C	32C	33B	34C	35D
36A	37A	38B	39C	40D
41C	42D	43D	44B	45D
46D	47D	48D	49C	50C
51B	52A	53B	54A	55C
56D	57B	58C	59B	60B

8. ACTION VERB AND STATIVE VERBS**TEST 8.1**

379. a. "Wonder" là động từ thuộc nhóm state verbs, không thể dùng ở hình thức tiếp diễn.
 380. c. Tương tự như câu trên.
 381. f. Hành động đang diễn ra.
 382. g. "Prefer" là động từ thuộc nhóm state verbs, không thể dùng ở hình thức tiếp diễn.
 383. i. Tương tự như câu trên.
 384. l. Dùng hình thức tiếp diễn vì động từ "be" ở đây diễn tả hành động của chủ ngữ (= the dog is behaving in a friendly manner to the postman). Xem 8.2.
 385. m.
 386. o. Tương tự như câu trên.
 387. r. Hành động đang diễn ra.
 388. s. "Possess" là động từ thuộc nhóm state verbs, không thể dùng ở hình thức tiếp diễn.

TEST 8.2

389. j. "To be scared of sth" (= sợ cái gì).
 390. f. "To be worried about sth" (= lo lắng điều gì).
 391. i. "To feel exhausted" (= cảm thấy kiệt sức).
 392. b.
 393. a.
 394. c.

395. d. "To be broken" (= hỏng máy).
 396. g. "To be satisfied with sth" (= hài lòng về điều gì).
 397. h. "To be acquainted with sb" (= quen với ai).
 398. e. "To be qualified for sth" (= có đủ tư cách/trình độ)

9. PHRASAL VERBS

TEST 9.1

399. C. To hold on (*chờ*): Hold on a moment, please!
 400. A. "To put sb through" (= nối điện thoại cho ai): I'll put you through to our boss.
 401. D. "To live up to sth" (= xứng đáng với): The music show didn't live up to my expectations.
 402. A. "To break up" (= tan vỡ): Their marriage is breaking up.
 403. C.
 404. C. "To put up with sb/sth" = "to endure sb/sth" (= chịu đựng): I can't put up with my noisy neighbours any more.
 405. C. "To die out" (= chết sạch): Many species die out every year.
 406. B.
 407. C. "To turn down" (= từ chối): I turned down an invitation for a weekend party.
 408. B. "To get away from sth" (= thoát khỏi): We need to get away from the idea that money is the most important thing in life.
 409. B. "To turn out" (= hóa ra, thành ra): He turned out to be a spy!
 410. A. "To take back one's words" (= rút lại lời nói).
 411. C. "To come across sb/sth" (= tình cờ gặp): I came across a man hoeing a field on my way home.
 412. B. "To grow up" (= lớn lên).
 413. D. "To get into a club, team, school" (= gia nhập, nhập học): He failed to get into the medical school.
 414. B. "To fill sth up with sth" (= đổ đầy): He filled the tank up with clean water.
 415. C. "To come up with a plan, idea, solution" (= đề xuất): In the end the committee came up with a compromise.
 416. B. "To put off" (= hoãn lại): Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
 417. D. "To go over" (= xem lại, ôn lại): Let's go over the research paper before we hand it in.
 418. C. Xem câu 404.
 419. A. "To watch/Look out for sth/sb" (= coi chừng): Watch out for wild animals when you cross this area.
 420. A.
 421. A. "(Airplanes, birds) take off" (= cất cánh): After refuelling we took off.
 422. C. "To break off" (= tạm ngừng hoạt động): Our centre breaks off for two weeks in January.
 423. A. "To cut down" (= cắt giảm): We need to cut down air pollution to 50% by the year 2020.
 424. B. "To pick up" (= đón): We drove to the airport to pick up our friend Tom.
 425. B. Chú ý phân biệt "knock sb down" (= xô ngã) và "knock sb out" (= hạ đo ván, làm bất tỉnh).
 426. D. "To come up" (= được nêu lên, đưa ra): The question came up for discussion this morning.
 427. B. "To take on sb" (= tuyển dụng): They took me on because I was a good engineer.

428. A. "To run out of sth" (= cạn hết): We are rapidly running out of money.

TEST 9.2

429. A. "To set off/set out" (= khởi hành): We set off for Alaska under grey skies.

430. A. "To pick up (= thu lượm) a skill, habit, language": Did you pick up any Chinese while you were staying there? Chú ý sự khác biệt với cách dùng "pick up" ở câu 424.

431. A. "To bring up sb" (= nuôi dưỡng): She brought up two children alone.

432. A. "To tell off sb for doing sth" (= quở trách, phê bình): John told off his little son for making so much noise.

433. B. "To do away with sth" (= loại trừ): You cannot do away with violence by using violence.

434. C. "To come along" (= đi theo): Thank you for coming along at this inconvenient time. Can you come along with us?

435. B. Xem câu 419.

436. C. "To put sb up" (= thu xếp chỗ ở tạm): We can put you up here for the night.

437. C. "(An alarm clock, a bell etc.) go off" (= reo, kêu vang): Every morning, my alarm clock goes off in time for me to go to school.

438. B. "To clear off" (= cắt xéo): Now you clear off and leave me alone.

439. D. "To turn sb/sth down" (= từ chối): She applied for a job in a restaurant but was turned down. Xem thêm câu 407.

440. D. "To break down" (= hỏng máy): My TV has broken down.

441. D. "To put (money, time...) aside" (= để dành): We put some money aside every month for our retirement.

442. A. "To pull through" (= bình phục): The doctors said he'll pull through.

443. A. "To break into sth" (đột nhập): He broke into a shop one night and killed the proprietor.

444. A. "To set up sth" (= thành lập, xây dựng): The city council has decided to set up a monument in memory of the dead.

445. B. "To fall through" (= thất bại): Our project fell through because of lack of money.

446. A. "To come along" (= Nào đi!) được dùng khi muốn thúc giục người nào lên đường. Xem cách dùng khác của "come along" tại câu 434.

447. A. "To give up sth" (= từ bỏ): She'll never give up hope for a better life.

448. A. Xem câu 416.

449. B. "To knock down/knock over sb" (= húc ngã): I nearly knocked down a person walking in the street.

450. A. "To call for sb" (= đến đón ai): I'll call for you at 6:30 and we'll go to the cinema together.

451. C. "To come out" (= lộ ra): All the facts came out after her father's death.

452. D. "To write out (= viết với đầy đủ thông tin vào...) a cheque, receipt, list, prescription etc."

453. A. "To finish off" (= kết thúc): He has just finished off his thesis.

454. D. Xem câu 400.

455. D. "To get over sth" (= vượt qua được): John did not get over his homesickness for some time.

456. B. "To make out sth" (= nhận ra): The policeman could just make out the number plate of the car.

457. C. "To turn into sb" (= trở nên): John has turned into a tall, handsome man.

458. D. "To run after sb" (= đuổi theo): Tom ran after him, yelling to him to stop.

TEST 9.3

459. B. "To live on sth" (= sống dựa vào)

460. A. "To give up" (= bỏ cuộc)

461. C. "To fall back" (= tụt lại đằng sau): She fell back with a scream when she saw the terrorist...

462. D. "To apply for (a job, permit, visa...)" (= xin việc, giấy phép, thị thực): Tom decided to apply for the job advertised on the Daily News.

463. A. "To agree with sb" (= đồng ý): I don't agree with her, but I admire her for sticking to her principles.

464. A. Xem câu 455.

465. D. "To catch up with sb" (= theo kịp): Go on ahead. I'll catch up with you.

466. C. Xem câu 407 và 439.

467. C. Xem câu 420.

468. B. Xem câu 412.

469. D. Xem câu 424.

470. D. "To wrap up sth" (= gói): He was waiting for the shop-assistant to wrap it up.

471. A. Xem câu 449.

472. D. "To hold up sth" (= làm chậm trễ): My trip was held up by the strike.

473. D. "To take on (a job, task, responsibility)" (= nhận một công việc...): She took on more work at the weekend. Chú ý thêm cách dùng của "take on" ở câu 427.

474. D. Xem câu 455.

475. C. Xem câu 416.

476. A. Xem câu 419.

477. C. "To set up sth" (= thành lập, xây dựng): The first thing to do in the crisis is to set up a committee. Xem thêm ví dụ ở câu 444.

478. B. Tương tự câu 472.

479. D. "To pull down" (= phá dỡ): The council has decided to pull all those houses down.

480. D. "To fill in/out (= điền vào) a form": We were asked to fill in all the customs forms.

481. B. "To settle down" (= ổn định cuộc sống): John told Mary that after this, he would settle down and marry her.

482. B. "To drop in (= ghé, tạt vào thăm) on sb": I dropped in on my sister during the evening.

483. B. Xem câu 411.

484. A. "To put up a building, fence, wall..." (= xây dựng): They are going to put up a whole block of apartments here.

485. C. Xem câu 428.

486. D. Xem câu 414.

487. A. "To put out (a fire)" (= dập tắt)

488. C. Xem câu 442.

489. B. Xem câu 438.

490. A. Xem câu 457.

10. SUBJUNCTIVE VERBS

TEST 10.1

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 491. C. | 492. C. | 493. D. | 494. B. |
| 495. A. | 496. D. | 497. D. | 498. A. |
| 499. D. | 500. C. | 501. B. | 502. C. |
| 503. B. | 504. D. | 505. B. | 506. B. |
| 507. D. | 508. A. | 509. B. | 510. D. |
| 511. C. | 512. A. | 513. C. | 514. C. |
| 515. A. | 516. A. | 517. B. | 518. B. |
| 519. A. | 520. B. | | |

11. I WISH, IF ONLY & UNREAL PAST

TEST 11.1

521. C. Chú ý thời gian của hành động (quá khứ), do đó động từ phải lùi về một bậc (Past Perfect).
522. C. Phải dùng "were addressing" để diễn tả sự việc "nói trước công chúng" khó có thể xảy ra.
523. B. Chú ý thời gian quá khứ (Tom and I did most of it).
524. B. Mong ước ở hiện tại: động từ ở thì quá khứ.
525. C. Mong ước ở quá khứ.
526. C. Mong ước ở quá khứ.
527. A. Như trên.
528. B. Như trên.
529. D.
530. C. Thời gian của hành động ở quá khứ.
531. C. Chú ý câu "I really want but I don't know how to go about it" diễn tả mong ước về một hành động ở hiện tại.
532. B.
533. C. Phải dùng "had spent" để diễn tả sự việc đã không xảy ra ở quá khứ.
534. C.
535. C. Dùng "would" để diễn tả mong ước không có thật ở tương lai.
536. A. Dùng "had told" để diễn tả mong ước trái với sự thật.
537. C.
538. C.
539. A. Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng "It looks like..." (đáp án C), tuy nhiên cách dùng này chỉ được chấp nhận trong lối nói thường đàm.
540. B.
541. A. Dùng "knew" để diễn tả sự việc ngược với sự thật ở hiện tại (= cậu ấy không biết gì cả).
542. C.
543. C.
544. B. Dùng "would change/decide" để diễn tả mong ước ngược với sự thật ở tương lai.
545. C.
546. C. Dùng "were made" để diễn tả sự việc không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại.

547. D. Dùng "had been informed" để diễn tả mong ước đã không thực hiện được ở quá khứ.
 548. C.
 549. B. Dùng "were" để diễn tả ý tưởng ngược với sự thật ở hiện tại (sự thật là cô ấy không còn là trẻ con nữa).
 550. B.

12. PASSIVE SENTENCES

TEST 12.1

551. A. Dùng Simple Past passive do thời gian đã được xác định (15,000 years ago).
 552. B.
 553. B. "To be equipped with" (= được trang bị với).
 554. C. Dùng Present Continuous passive với "right now".
 555. D.
 556. B. Chú ý trật tự của cụm động từ ở thì Present Perfect passive là: "has/have + been + past participle".
 557. A.
 558. A.
 559. A.
 560. D. Chú ý các cụm động từ thụ động kết hợp với các modal verbs (can, may, must...): "can/may/must/will be + past participle".
 561. C.
 562. B.
 563. A. "It" thay cho "tornado" và làm chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động "It destroyed...".
 564. D. Xem câu 560.
 565. D. To be protected from sth (= được bảo vệ khỏi).
 566. B. Have + adv + been + PP.
 567. B.
 568. B. C (với Present Continuous passive) sai vì ở đây người nói muốn diễn tả sự việc thường diễn ra vào các "Friday afternoons".
 569. B.
 570. D. Câu hỏi gián tiếp không buộc phải đảo trợ động từ ra trước chủ từ: I know why he was late.
 571. A.
 572. C.
 573. B.
 574. C. Không chọn B vì không nên dùng cấu trúc "get + past participle" với các sự kiện, kế hoạch lớn. Xem đoạn 5.1.
 575. C.
 576. C.
 577. B. Dùng Past Perfect passive để diễn tả hành động "installed" đã xảy ra trước hành động "arrived".
 578. D. Should + have + past participle (= đáng lẽ đã phải). Xem đoạn 3.10a.
 579. B.

580. C. "were praised for sth" (= đã được khen ngợi vì...)

TEST 12.2

581. B. D sai vì ở đây phải dùng thì Present Simple để diễn tả sự thật tổng quát (general truth).
582. B.
583. A. Dùng Future Perfect passive để diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra trước "the end of the century".
584. A.
585. C. Hành động đang diễn ra trong quá khứ thì một hành động khác xảy đến (cách dùng 1.4b).
586. B.
587. A.
588. C.
589. D. Tương tự câu 585.
590. A. Dùng Simple Present passive để diễn tả sự kiện xảy ra thường xuyên (each year) ở hiện tại.
591. D.
592. D. Về "got left", xem đoạn 5.1 và 5.2.
593. B.
594. B. Dùng Present Perfect active với "over the last ten years".
595. D. Dùng Present Perfect passive để diễn tả ý thụ động với "through the years".
596. C.
597. A.
598. A. B sai vì "could have been killed" diễn tả ý "có thể đã...", diễn tả sự suy đoán về một khả năng có thể đã xảy ra trước "didn't want".
599. B.
600. C. Dùng Present Perfect passive với "up to now".
601. B. "Shouldn't be put off" (= không nên bị hoãn lại).
602. A. "are generally supported by" (= nói chung được tài trợ bởi).
603. A.
604. D. "must be typed" (= phải được đánh máy).
605. D. "should be postponed" (= nên được hoãn lại).
606. B. Dùng Simple Past passive với thời gian xác định "around the turn of 20th century".
607. B.
608. D. Dùng Simple Present passive (are sent) để diễn tả hành động hiện nay vẫn diễn ra.
609. A.
610. B. Phải dùng "were hunted and (were) killed" (Past Simple passive) vì thời gian được xác định với "in the 1800s".

ASSIGNMENT 2

PART A

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. B | 4. D | 5. B |
| 6. B | 7. C | 8. B | 9. B | 10. C |

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 11. B | 12. A | 13. A | 14. C | 15. B |
| 16. A | 17. C | 18. A | 19. C | 20. B |
| 21. B | 22. D | 23. C | 24. D | 25. C |
| 26. D | 27. D | 28. B | 29. D | 30. C |

PART B

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 31. D | 32. B | 33. B | 34. B | 35. D |
| 36. C | 37. D | 38. D | 39. C | 40. A |
| 41. B | 42. B | 43. B | 44. C | 45. D |
| 46. A | 47. D | 48. A | 49. B | 50. D |
| 51. B | 52. C | 53. D | 54. D | 55. B |
| 56. D | 57. D | 58. A | 59. C | 60. D |

13. COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

TEST 13.1

611. D. "Exercise" vừa là danh từ không đếm được (= sự tập luyện): Swimming is good exercise, vừa là danh từ đếm được (= bài tập rèn luyện): He set her an exercise for the piano.
612. A. "People" có hai cách dùng:
- (1) "People" (= những người): There are ten people/persons in the meeting. Ở cách dùng này, "people" luôn có nghĩa số nhiều.
- (2) "People" (= dân tộc): the rights of Asian peoples. Ở cách dùng này, "people" có thể dùng ở số ít (a people) hoặc số nhiều (many peoples across the world).
613. D. "Fish" có hình thức số ít và số nhiều không đổi: We caught a fish/ten fish. Khi muốn nói các loại cá khác nhau (different kinds of fish) như cod, salmon, shark..., chúng ta dùng *fishes*: There are a great many different fishes in the rivers around here.
614. A.
615. A. "Stimulus" (= sự kích thích), số nhiều: "stimuli".
616. A.
617. D. "phenomenon" (= hiện tượng), số nhiều: "phenomena".
618. A.
619. B. "criterion" (= tiêu chí), số nhiều: "criteria".
620. B.
621. A. "parenthesis" (= dấu ngoặc đơn), số nhiều "parentheses".
622. C.
623. D. Cả hai hình thức "mosquitoes" và "mosquitos" đều được dùng.
624. B.
625. A. Sheep (= con cừu) có số ít và số nhiều không đổi: a sheep, ten sheep.
626. C. Chú ý đối với các danh từ không đếm được như "luggage", "furniture", "equipment"..., khi cần đề cập đến số lượng chúng ta phải dùng các từ đi trước như "a piece of", "an item of"... (xem bảng liệt kê ở 13.2).
627. B. Chú ý "work" (= công việc) không có hình thức số nhiều. Khi muốn nói đến số lượng công

việc, chúng ta nói: a bit/piece of work.

628. A.

629. B. "Knowledge" (= kiến thức) là danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ chỉ dùng ở số ít với mạo từ "a": He has a wide knowledge of literature.

630. D. Đối với các danh từ chỉ vật dụng được tạo thành bởi hai phần giống nhau, khi cần đề cập đến số lượng chúng ta thường dùng "a pair of", "two pairs of" đi trước: a pair of trousers / jeans / glasses / binoculars... (không được nói: *a trouser, *a jean...).

631. A.

632. C. Trong câu này "a piece of cake" được dùng với nghĩa bóng "việc dễ như bỡn".

- How did you manage to get into the room?

- It was a piece of cake. One of its windows was open.

633. A. Xem bảng liệt kê cách dùng từ *furniture* ở 13.2.

634. A.

635. A. "Mail" (= thư từ, bưu phẩm) là danh từ không đếm được. Khi muốn nói đến số lượng, chúng ta nói: "a piece of mail".

636. C.

637. D.

638. B.

639. A. Chú ý sự khác nhau giữa "time" (= thời gian nói chung) là danh từ không đếm được như trong "How do you find time to write the book?" và "time" (= một khoảng thời gian để thực hiện một việc gì) như "The book took me quite a long time to finish."

640. C.

14. COMPOUND NOUNS

TEST 14.1

641. A. Chú ý vị trí của từ chính (rod) thường nằm ở vị trí cuối cùng.

642. C.

643. A.

644. A. B sai vì "golden" có thể có nghĩa "có màu như vàng (golden hair)".

645. A.

646. D. "Businessman" (= nhà doanh nghiệp). "Vendor" (= người bán hàng rong: flower/street vendor). "Dealer" (= nhà buôn một loại hàng cụ thể: art/car/antique dealer).

647. B. Shop (từ Anh) = store (từ Mỹ) (= cửa hàng). Department store = a very large shop. Chú ý không có từ "department shop".

648. C.

649. B.

650. D. "Check-up" (= kiểm tra sức khỏe: to have a dental/thorough check-up)

651. A. "Morning sickness" (= sự nôn oẹ do thai nghén).

652. B. Chú ý từ chính "indicator" luôn nằm ở cuối cùng.

653. B. Tương tự như trên.

654. A. Tương tự như trên.

655. C.

656. B. "Eco-system" (= hệ sinh thái)
657. A.
658. B.
659. B. "Ballpoint" hoặc "ballpoint pen" (= bút, viết bi)
660. B.
661. A. "Wild-life preservation" (= khu bảo tồn động vật hoang dã)
662. B. "sight-seeing tour" (= chuyến tham quan)
663. C.
664. C. "To do the washing" (= giặt quần áo). "Washing machine" (= máy giặt).
665. D. "Editor-in-chief" (= tổng biên tập, chủ bút)
666. C.
667. A.
668. B. "Doghouse" (= chuồng chó)
669. A. "Zoo veterinary surgeon" (= bác sĩ thú y của sở thú)
670. B. "Dishwasher" (= máy rửa chén). "To do the washing-up" (= rửa chén, bát). A sai vì "washer" là máy giặt (= washing machine).

15. THE ORDER OF ADJECTIVES

TEST 15.1

671. C. "Pleased" là một predicative adjective. Chúng ta có thể nói "The customer is/feels pleased" nhưng không thể nói "the pleased customer".
672. B. "A boring man" (= He bores someone he talks to), khác với "The man is bored" (= He is bored by someone he talks to).
673. A. "Selfish" (= ích kỉ)
674. C. "To be tolerant of sth" (= dễ tha thứ đối với)
675. A. "Lonely" (= cô đơn), "alone" (= một mình): Mary lives alone and often feels lonely.
676. B.
677. C.
678. A. "Available" (= free to be seen, talked to, etc.). "To be capable of doing sth" (= có khả năng làm việc gì).
679. D. "applicable to sth" (= có thể áp dụng với). "Entitled to sth" (= được quyền hưởng, nhận cái gì)
680. C.
681. D.
682. A. Chúng ta có thể nói "The child is asleep" nhưng không thể nói "an asleep child" vì "asleep" là một predicative adjective. Phải nói: "a sleeping child". (Xem 15.1b trên.)
683. A. Các tính từ khi được theo sau bởi giới từ (tired of, confident of, greedy for...) có thể đi sau danh từ chúng phẩm định: He's a man greedy for money. (Xem 15.1c trên.)
684. B.
685. A.
686. D. A sai vì "afraid" là một predicative adjective.
687. A. Xem 15.2 về trật tự của các tính từ.
688. B.

689. B. A, C, D sai vì chúng là các predicative adjectives, không thể đứng trước danh từ.
690. B. "Glad", "pleased" và "content" là các predicative adjectives.
691. C.
692. A. Xem 15.2 về trật tự của các tính từ.
693. A. Chú ý sự khác biệt giữa các present participles (mang nghĩa chủ động) và past participles (mang nghĩa thụ động) dùng làm tính từ: Hãy so sánh "The film was very amusing" và "The audience was very amused".
694. D.
695. A.
696. B. Xem 15.1c
697. B. "To scare" (= gây sợ hãi) thường được dùng ở dạng past participle: to be scared of.
698. C.
699. C. A và B sai vì "fine" và "well" là các predicative adjectives.
700. A, B, C sai vì chúng là các predicative adjectives. D sai vì "like" là giới từ.

17. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

TEST 17.1

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 701. j | 702. e | 703. b | 704. a |
| 705. c | 706. f | 707. d | 708. g |
| 709. h | 710. i | | |

18. ADJECTIVES + PREPOSITIONS

TEST 18.1

711. D. "To be ashamed of sb" (= hổ thẹn vì ai).
712. C.
713. D. "Contrary to sth" (= trái với). Contrary to our advice, he continued to keep bad company.
714. C.
715. B.
716. D.
717. D.
718. A. "To be capable of doing sth" (= có khả năng làm gì).
719. D.
720. A.
721. B. "To be indifferent to sth" (= thờ ơ đối với việc gì).
722. C.
723. A. "To be convenient for sb" (= thuận tiện đối với ai).
724. B.
725. C. "To be concerned about" (= lo lắng về). "To be concerned with sth" (= quan tâm về): We are more concerned with quality than quantity.
726. D.
727. B. "To be aware of sth" (= nhận thức về)

728. A

729. B. "To finish sth ahead of sth" (= hoàn thành cái gì trước thời gian dự định): We finished the assignment two days ahead of the deadline.

730. A. "To be typical of sth" (= tiêu biểu cho): This painting is typical of Manet's portraits.

731. D.

732. A.

733. D.

734. B. "To be absorbed in sth" (= để hết tâm trí vào): I was absorbed in the game on TV that I didn't hear him come in.

735. A.

736. C. "To be/feel sorry for sb" (= cảm thông với ai). "To be sorry about sth" (= cảm thấy ân hận về điều gì): I am very sorry about the accident.

737. B.

738. B.

739. D. "To be famous for sth" (= nổi tiếng về). The town is famous for its local delicacies.

740. C. "To be fed up with sth" (= chán ngấy điều gì).

19. THE POSITION OF ADVERBS

TEST 19.1

741. D. "Almost" phẩm định "never", do đó phải đứng trước "never".

742. A. "Hardly" (= almost not). Chúng ta có "hardly ever" nhưng không có "hardly never".

743. C. "Frequently" phẩm định "caused".

744. C.

745. A.

746. B. A và C sai vì không có phó từ "**fastly".

747. B.

748. B. "Extremely" phẩm định "difficult".

749. A. Các phó từ chỉ thể cách như "slowly" được đặt sau V + O.

750. B.

751. D. "Eventually" (= cuối cùng) có thể được đặt ở đầu, giữa và cuối câu.

752. B. "Always" luôn đi trước động từ chính hoặc sau động từ "be".

753. A. "Exactly" phẩm định "when".

754. B.

755. D. "Usually" luôn đi trước động từ chính hoặc sau động từ "be".

756. A.

757. B. Chú ý cấu trúc với "so + adv + that" (= đến nỗi mà).

758. B. "Discernibly" phẩm định "different".

759. B. "Frequently" là phó từ chỉ tần suất được đặt ở giữa câu. "Frequently" chỉ được đặt đầu câu khi chúng ta muốn nhấn mạnh.

760. B. Các phó từ được dùng để phẩm định cả câu như "luckily", "fortunately", "undoubtedly"... thường được đặt ở đầu câu.

761. D. A sai vì "closely" không thể đứng gần và phẩm định "found" được (dễ gây nhầm nghĩa).

762. A. Trong câu này "accurately" phải đứng gần "measure"; các trường hợp khác sẽ gây nhầm lẫn.
763. A. Lí do tương tự như câu 760.
764. C. "Probably" thường đi trước các trợ động từ ở dạng phủ định (won't, can't...)
765. A. "Always" được dùng trước động từ chính (finished).
766. C.
767. A. "Just" thường đi sau các trợ động từ ("have", "is" ...): The play is just beginning...
768. C. B sai vì không thể đặt "immediately" giữa động từ và tân ngữ.
769. C. "Still" đi trước động từ chính (Do you still live in Sydney?) hoặc trước trợ động từ ở dạng phủ định (I still didn't think he would come).
770. C.

20. PHRASES

TEST 20.1

771. A. Chú ý "acting on an object as it moves ..." là cụm phân từ (xem 20.1) thay cho mệnh đề "which act on an object as it moves..."
772. C. "Grown for their strong fiber" là cụm phân từ thay cho mệnh đề "which are grown for their strong fiber".
773. D. "With + noun + danh động từ" là cụm từ được dùng phổ biến thay cho một mệnh đề (xem 20.7). Một ví dụ khác: His study was a nice room with books lining the wall.
774. C. Xem 20.5.
775. C. A sai vì cụm giới từ "On each seed" không thể làm chủ ngữ cho câu. B sai vì không thể nói "Each of seed..." (phải nói "Each of the seeds...").
776. B.
777. B. "Placed in front of a camera lens" là cụm phân từ (xem 20.1) thay cho "which is placed in front of a..."
778. C. B sai vì chủ từ "the Green Tower" đã được dùng làm chủ từ của "was the most distinguished ...". D sai vì cách dùng cụm động từ nguyên mẫu ở đây không phù hợp.
779. A. Xem 20.5.
780. D. "Training for a career in dance" là cụm danh động từ, làm chủ từ cho "begins".
781. B. "To appear" là cụm động từ nguyên mẫu thường được dùng sau các từ chỉ số thứ tự (the first, second...) để bắt mệnh đề: He was the first man to climb Mount Everest (= ...the first man who climbed Mount Everest).
782. A. Xem 20.1.
783. D.
784. D. "Making important discoveries..." là cụm phân từ thay cho mệnh đề "who makes important discoveries".
785. C. A và B sai vì câu chưa có động từ đã chia. D sai vì câu chỉ có mệnh đề phụ, chưa có mệnh đề chính.
786. B.
787. B.
788. B. "Conditioning the soil" là cụm danh động từ được dùng trong cấu trúc song song (parallel

- structure) cùng với các cụm danh động từ "breaking down deadwood", và "pollinating plants".
789. B. "Frozen" là quá khứ phân từ được dùng trong cấu trúc song song (parallel structure) cùng với các quá khứ phân từ "packed" và "stored".
790. C.
791. C.
792. D. Chú ý cách dùng "a man/person with (flu, red hair...)".
793. A.
794. B. Xem 20.5.
795. A.
796. C. Chú ý rằng chủ ngữ được hiểu ngầm của "Unlike most birds" phải là "vultures", do đó trong mệnh đề theo sau, câu lựa chọn nào có "vultures" đóng vai trò làm chủ ngữ mới là lựa chọn đúng.
797. D.
798. A.
799. B.
800. A. "Handled easily" kết hợp với "operated smoothly" tạo thành các cấu trúc song song (past participle + adv).

TEST 20.2

801. B. Cụm từ "a method" đóng vai trò đồng cách với "(a concept called) scientific management".
Xem 20.5.
802. B.
803. A.
804. A. Chú ý cách dùng "with" (= vì) trong "blue with cold", "white with fear", "red with anger", "green with envy", vv...
805. A. Cấu trúc song song (parallel structure) này bao gồm "with + N, + N, + N".
806. D. Cấu trúc song song này bao gồm "in + N, in + N, in + N" (chú ý giới từ "in" được lặp lại).
807. B. Cấu trúc song song này bao gồm "have + PP, + PP, + PP". (PP = past participle).
808. B. Cấu trúc song song này bao gồm "in the use of + N, + N, + N".
809. A. Chủ ngữ của "Fearing economic hardship" phải là con người, vì vậy chỉ câu lựa chọn nào có chủ ngữ chỉ về người mới phù hợp.
810. D. A, B, C là các lựa chọn sai vì chúng không tạo thành một mệnh đề hoàn chỉnh (có chứa động từ đã chia).
811. D. C sai vì "One of the oldest bridges still is used today" vừa sai về vị trí của phó từ *still*, vừa sai vì mệnh đề này không thể dùng làm chủ ngữ của cả câu.
812. B. Chủ ngữ được hiểu ngầm của "Orbiting from 2.7...." là "Pluto", vì vậy chỉ câu lựa chọn nào có chủ ngữ là "Pluto" mới phù hợp.
813. C.
814. A. Chủ ngữ được hiểu ngầm của "Smaller and flatter than an orange" là "tangerine", vì vậy chỉ câu lựa chọn nào có chủ ngữ là "tangerine" mới phù hợp.
815. C. Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu "To develop film..." được dùng làm chủ từ trong câu.
816. D.

817. A. Cụm danh động từ "Crossing rivers" được dùng làm chủ từ trong câu.
 818. C.
 819. D. Xem 20.5 về danh từ đồng cách.
 820. C.
 821. B. Tương tự câu 751.
 822. C. Chủ ngữ của "Widely reproduced in magazines and books" phải là "photographs", vì vậy chỉ câu lựa chọn nào có chủ ngữ là "photographs" mới phù hợp.
 823. A. "The first library to be established" = "The first library which was established". Xem thêm câu 751.
 824. A. Cấu trúc song song này bao gồm các "preposition + N".
 825. C. Cấu trúc song song này bao gồm các "V + O".
 826. B. Chủ ngữ của "Like the central government" phải là "provinces and local governments", do đó chỉ câu lựa chọn có chủ ngữ là "provinces and local governments" mới là câu đúng.
 827. A.
 828. B. Cấu trúc song song này gồm "what + N", "how + N" và "how + N".
 829. B.
 830. C. Chủ ngữ của "Unlike most modernist poets" phải là danh từ chỉ người, vì vậy chỉ có câu C là phù hợp.

21. CLAUSES

TEST 21.1

831. A. "Allowing them" = "which allow them".
 832. C.
 833. D.
 834. C. Chú ý cấu trúc "It is + adj + to-inf."
 835. A. C và D sai vì câu không thể chỉ có mệnh đề phụ.
 836. B.
 837. D.
 838. B. Nếu chấp nhận A hoặc D thì câu sai vì câu chỉ gồm có mệnh đề phụ (which...) mà thôi.
 839. C. Mệnh đề danh từ "That the poet ... in melody" là chủ từ của câu. Xem 21.2.3i.
 840. C. A, B, D sai vì như vậy câu không có động từ đã chia.
 841. C.
 842. B. Quan hệ giữa hai mệnh đề điều kiện này là quan hệ điều kiện với "if" - kết quả (IF - result).
 843. C.
 844. C. "That malaria was caused by breathing impure air over" là chủ từ của câu.
 845. C. "How fleas are ... other insects" là mệnh đề danh từ, tân ngữ của giới từ "on".
 846. D.
 847. A. B và D sai vì như vậy câu không có mệnh đề chính.
 848. A.
 849. A. "Whose novels" = "the writer's novels". Ngoài chức năng chỉ sở hữu, "whose" còn được dùng để liên kết hai mệnh đề với nhau.
 850. C.

851. D. "When added to a liquid" là mệnh đề rút gọn của "When it is added to a liquid".
852. D. "Since" (= Bởi vì), được dùng trước mệnh đề. "On account of" cũng có nghĩa như "since", nhưng chỉ được dùng trước cụm danh từ mà thôi. Hãy so sánh: (a): She retired early on account of poor health. (b) Since she had problems with her heart, she retired early.
853. C. "As" = "When".
854. D. Mệnh đề danh từ "What ecologists call a "gallery forest" là chủ từ của câu.
855. C. A, B và D sai vì câu chỉ có mệnh đề phụ.
856. C.
857. B. "Who had helped... in the region" là mệnh đề tính ngữ, bổ nghĩa cho "My friend John".
858. A. Tương tự câu 804.
859. B.
860. B. Câu B là câu đúng vì có động từ đã chia ("grows").

TEST 21.2

861. B.
862. D.
863. A. Cần nêu lên mối tương phản giữa hai mệnh đề với "but".
864. A. B sai vì "which" đã được dùng thay cho "instruments" và làm tân ngữ cho "watch".
865. B.
866. B. A sai vì thừa "who", C và D sai vì mệnh đề không có động từ đã chia.
867. B.
868. B. "Whose absence" = "absence of plants and animals".
869. C. To be intended for sth (= được thiết kế nhằm mục đích gì): The building is intended for homeless people.
870. D. Đại từ liên hệ "that" thay cho "straight line" và làm chủ ngữ cho động từ "touches".
871. B.
872. B. Chú ý "most of them" (lựa chọn C) có nghĩa tương tự nhưng không có chức năng nối câu như "most of which". Xem 21.2.1.
873. D.
874. A.
875. A, B, C và D sai vì không phải là mệnh đề phụ hoàn chỉnh.
876. B.
877. C.
878. D. "When shone" = "When it is shone".
879. D. D với "although" là lựa chọn đúng vì câu cần nêu lên mối quan hệ tương phản giữa hai mệnh đề.
880. B.
881. A.
882. A.
883. D. A sai vì vị trí của "was" không đúng. B và C sai vì mệnh đề với "When" chưa có động từ đã chia.
884. B.

885. D.
 886. C.
 887. A. B và D sai vì thừa trợ động từ "do". C sai vì "that" không phù hợp về nghĩa.
 888. D.
 889. A.
 890. C. A và B sai vì thiếu đại từ liên hệ, D sai vì "who" không phù hợp.

22. LINKING ADVERBS & CONJUNCTIONS

TEST 22.1

891. C. A và B sai vì "on account of" và "despite" là giới từ (không thể đứng trước mệnh đề).
 Xem thêm chương 20, mục "Các giới từ và liên từ có cùng nghĩa".
 892. B.
 893. C. "Otherwise" (= nếu không thì).
 894. D. "Unless" (conj) (= trừ phi).
 895. A. "Whereas" (conj) (= trong khi).
 896. C.
 897. A. "Now that" (= vì rằng).
 898. B. Chú ý "because of" đi trước danh từ, "because" đi trước mệnh đề.
 899. B.
 900. A. B sai vì "despite" (= dù cho) là một giới từ, không thể đứng trước mệnh đề.
 901. C.
 902. A. "Due to" (prep) (= do ở).
 903. C.
 904. D. "In addition to" (prep) + N (= ngoài...).
 905. A.
 906. B. "Furthermore" (conj) (= hơn thế nữa).
 907. B.
 908. C. "In the event that" (+ clause) (= trong trường hợp).
 909. B. "Since" (= vì).
 910. B.
 911. B.
 912. A.
 913. B. "Whether... or not" (= dù có ... hay không).
 914. C. "On the other hand" (= mặt khác).
 915. D.
 916. D. B sai vì "in spite of" là một giới từ, không thể đứng trước mệnh đề.
 917. A.
 918. A. B sai vì dù có nghĩa tương tự như "because", "on account of" là giới từ nên không thể đi trước mệnh đề.
 919. C.
 920. B. "In the end" (= cuối cùng)

23. EMPHASIS WITH *IT* & *WHAT*

TEST 23.1

921. B. Chú ý trong các bài tập về loại này, chúng ta phải vận dụng nhiều loại kiến thức khác nhau về ngữ pháp. A sai vì "rather" không có nghĩa phủ định như "not".
922. C. A sai vì cụm từ "has the surprise" sai. B sai vì thừa "did".
923. A. Chú ý cụm từ "for this" (= vì điều này) không có trong câu B và C.
924. A. Chú ý sau *What*-clause, động từ *be* có thể được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (*to*-infinitive) hay không (*bare infinitive*): *What he did is (to) stay in bed reading a novel.*
925. D. Câu có nhiều đáp án tùy theo điểm nhấn mạnh (*blue, wall hoặc wall blue*). *He's painted the wall blue.*
926. C.
927. D. A sai vì "when" không thích hợp trong câu này.
928. C.
929. A. B sai vì câu này có nghĩa "I wanted not to buy anything in this shop".
930. A.
931. C. A. sai vì thiếu "to". D sai vì thừa "it".
932. A.
933. D. A sai vì cả hai cụm từ "New York" và "twenty years ago" đều được đặt vào vị trí nhấn. B sai vì "twenty years" không rõ nghĩa (*ago? since?*).
934. D. Câu có nhiều đáp án tùy theo điểm nhấn mạnh.
935. B.
936. A. B sai vì thiếu "with".
937. A.
938. B. A sai vì lỗi cú pháp "glorious made".
939. C.
940. A. B sai vì thừa "to".
941. B. C sai về thì ("came" thay vì "comes").
942. B.
943. A.
944. A.
945. C. A sai vì câu dùng ở thể thụ động. B sai vì "have" không hòa hợp về số với "that" = "economy".
946. B. A sai vì thiếu "on".
947. B.
948. C.
949. A.
950. A. B sai vì "dark green" được đặt sai vị trí; C sai vì "have" không hòa hợp với "kitchen" về số. D sai vì ý lủng củng.

24. AGREEMENT OF SUBJECTS AND VERBS

TEST 24.1

951. D. "A number of" luôn luôn kết hợp với động từ số nhiều.

952. A.
 953. A. Xem 24.4.
 954. B. "Bread" và "butter" được xem là những chủ thể khác nhau.
 955. A.
 956. C. Xem 24.3.
 957. A. Xem 24.5.
 958. B. Xem 24.5. Các danh từ chỉ thời gian, tiền bạc, khoảng cách thường kết hợp với động từ số ít.
 959. B. Xem 24.4.
 960. C.
 961. A.
 962. A. Xem 24.3.
 963. B.
 964. A. Xem 24.7.
 965. D. "The number of" luôn luôn kết hợp với động từ số ít.
 966. B.
 967. C. Động từ kết hợp với chủ từ "these pictures", không kết hợp với danh từ theo sau "as well as".
 968. A.
 969. B. Tương tự câu 937.
 970. B.
 971. C.
 972. A.
 973. C. Tên các môn học kết hợp với động từ số ít. Xem 24.10.
 974. B. Động từ kết hợp với chủ từ "Mr John", không kết hợp với danh từ theo sau "accompanied by".
 975. C.
 976. D.
 977. B. Sau "the majority of", động từ có thể ở hình thức số ít hay số nhiều tùy danh từ theo sau:
 The majority of the *damage* is easy to repair.
 The majority of *demonstrators* are non-violent.
 978. A.
 979. C. Động từ kết hợp với chủ ngữ đơn "use".
 980. C.

25. INVERTED SENTENCES

TEST 25.1

981. C. Chủ ý trong câu đảo, các trợ động từ (do, will, can...) luôn được đặt trước chủ từ.
 982. A. Chủ ý "no sooner" được theo sau bởi "than"; "hardly" và "scarcely" được theo sau bởi "when" trong các câu đảo gồm hai mệnh đề.
 983. D. "Had the Titanic been equipped..." = "If the Titanic had been equipped..." . Câu điều kiện chỉ được đảo trong trường hợp mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause) dùng với *had* + PP và *were* + to-inf.

984. C.
985. C. "Had he not had a flat tire" = "if he hadn't had a flat tire". Về Câu điều kiện, xem chương 26.
986. B.
987. D. A và C sai vì trong câu đảo, phó từ phủ định "not" phải được theo sau bởi một cụm danh từ.
988. D. Người học cần làm quen và thuộc các cấu trúc đảo như "There is no + N, nor is there + N" (Không có..., và lại càng không có...).
989. D. Xem ví dụ tại 25.1.
990. B. Chú ý trong mệnh đề chính, trợ động từ "did" được đặt trước (giống như câu hỏi).
991. B.
992. B. Đây là cấu trúc "it was not until + clause + that... = Mãi đến khi... thì..."
993. B. Đây là câu đảo hai mệnh đề với "not until", trợ động từ trong mệnh đề theo sau được đặt trước chủ từ để nhấn mạnh.
994. B. Xem ví dụ tại 25.3.
995. A.
996. A.
997. A. Xem giải thích tại câu 953.
998. A. "Were she to come next month" = "If she were to come next month". Cấu trúc "were + to inf" được dùng để nhấn mạnh một ý định không thể thực hiện trong tương lai (very strong improbability of fulfilment) (Cô ấy không thể nào đến được – nhưng giả như cô ấy có đến...).
999. B. "Should I need..." = "If I should need...". Cách dùng "should" trong mệnh đề với "if" hàm ý đây là sự việc tình cờ, ngẫu nhiên ("Nếu như tôi có cần...").
1000. B.
1001. A.
1002. B.
1003. D.
1004. C.
1005. B. Chú ý "never + again" thường đi gần nhau trong các câu phủ định.
1006. B.
1007. A. Tương tự câu 963.
1008. B.
1009. C.
1010. C. "Should the train be delayed" = "If the train should be delayed". "Should" được dùng trong mệnh đề điều kiện để chỉ sự tình cờ, ngẫu nhiên. Trong trường hợp này người nói hoàn toàn không có ý niệm gì về sự có thể hoặc không thể của hành động.

26. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

TEST 26.1

1011. B. Hành động có thể xảy ra trong tương lai.
1012. D. Giả thuyết ngược với sự thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai (hiện nay thời tiết xấu).
1013. B. Giả thuyết ngược với sự thật ở quá khứ.
1014. C. Tương tự như trên.

1015. C. Tương tự như trên.
1016. B.
1017. C. "had someone told me" = "if someone had told me".
1018. B. Giả thuyết ngược với sự thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
1019. D.
1020. C. Giả thuyết ngược với sự thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
1021. B. "Had I been in the room" = "If I had been in the room".
1022. D. Sự việc có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
1023. B. "Should you have..." = "If you should have...". "Should" được dùng trong mệnh đề với "if" để chỉ một sự việc xảy ra hoàn toàn ngẫu nhiên, không tùy thuộc vào khả năng có thể hoặc không thể: "If Tom should win on his lottery ticket....".
1024. B. Giả thuyết ngược với sự thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
1025. C.
1026. B.
1027. D. "Would have returned your call" diễn tả sự việc không thể xảy ra trong quá khứ ("I didn't get home after midnight last night. Therefore I couldn't return your call").
1028. A.
1029. C.
1030. A. Giả thuyết ngược với sự thật ở quá khứ.
1031. D. Chú ý hình thức tiếp diễn ở "weren't working", từ đó chọn hình thức "present infinitive" (be + Present participle) cho mệnh đề kết quả.
1032. C.
1033. B. Sự việc có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
1034. D. Giả thuyết ngược với sự thật ở quá khứ. Cần chú ý thêm sự cần thiết phải dùng perfect infinitive trong mệnh đề kết quả. Xem 26.2.
1035. D.
1036. B.
1037. C. Chú ý phải dùng present infinitive để diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra với "now".
1038. D.
1039. A.
1040. C.

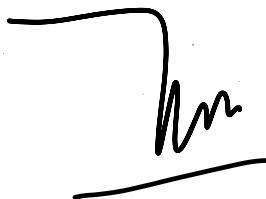
ASSIGNMENT 3

PART A

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. C | 4. C | 5. A |
| 6. B | 7. C | 8. A | 9. D | 10. C |
| 11. D | 12. C | 13. B | 14. A | 15. B |
| 16. C | 17. B | 18. C | 19. B | 20. B |
| 21. D | 22. B | 23. D | 24. A | 25. C |
| 26. A | 27. C | 28. A | 29. D | 30. C |

PART B

31. B	32. A	33. C	34. B	35. C
36. B	37. C	38. C	39. D	40. C
41. B	42. A	43. C	44. B	45. A
46. A	47. C	48. A	49. C	50. C
51. A	52. A	53. D	54. C	55. C
56. C	57. B	58. C	59. C	60. C

A handwritten signature or mark, possibly a stylized 'W' or 'M', written in black ink.

MỤC LỤC

1. Tenses	5
2. Verbs followed by gerunds & infinitives	25
3. Infinitives & modal verbs	39
4. <i>Used to</i> & <i>be / get used to</i>	51
5. <i>Get</i> + past participle	55
6. <i>Have</i> & <i>get</i> + O + V	58
7. <i>Make</i> & <i>do</i>	63
ASSIGNMENT 1	67
8. Action verbs & state verbs	73
9. Phrasal verbs	76
10. Subjunctive verbs	88
11. <i>I wish, if only</i> & unreal past	93
12. Passive sentences	98
ASSIGNMENT 2	106
13. Countable & uncountable nouns	112
14. Compound nouns	117
15. The order of adjectives	122
16. Compound adjectives	128
17. Adjectives used as nouns	130
18. Adjectives + prepositions	132
19. The position of adverbs	137
20. Phrases	143
21. Clauses	153
22. Linking adverbs & conjunctions	165
23. Emphasis with <i>it</i> & <i>what</i>	171
24. Agreement of subjects & verbs	177
25. Inverted sentences	183
26. Conditional sentences	190
ASSIGNMENT 3	196
ANSWER KEY	202

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản :

Chủ tịch HĐQT kiêm Tổng Giám đốc NGÔ TRẦN ÁI

Phó Tổng Giám đốc kiêm Tổng biên tập NGUYỄN QUÝ THAO

Tổ chức bàn thảo và chịu trách nhiệm nội dung :

Phó Tổng Giám đốc kiêm Giám đốc NXBGD tại TP. Đà Nẵng HUỲNH BÁ VÂN

Biên tập nội dung :

HUỲNH KIM TUẤN

Trình bày bìa :

PHAN MINH NHẬT

Sửa bài :

HUYỀN TRẦN – THU HƯƠNG

**CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH
VÀ BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM THỰC HÀNH**

Mã số : 81054N7- CPD

In 5.000 bản (QĐ in 78), khổ 17 x 24 cm tại Công ty CP in SGK Hòa Phát -
157 Tôn Đức Thắng, Tp. Đà Nẵng. Số đăng kí KHXB : 258-2007/CXB/3-541/GD.

Số in : 431/09. In xong và nộp lưu chiểu tháng 09 năm 2007.